<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lesson</th>
<th>Grammar</th>
<th>Vocabulary</th>
<th>Functional language</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1A Family life p6</td>
<td>Questions with <em>to be</em></td>
<td>Family &amp; friends</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1B Where are they now? p8</td>
<td>Questions with auxiliary verbs</td>
<td>Verb collocations (friendship)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Contractions 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1C Neighbours p10</td>
<td><em>How &amp; what</em> questions</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The alphabet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1D Making contact p12</td>
<td></td>
<td>Phone numbers Phone messages</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2A School days p16</td>
<td>Past simple</td>
<td>Adjectives with prepositions</td>
<td></td>
<td>Regular past simple verbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2B Irish schools p18</td>
<td><em>Used to</em></td>
<td>Education</td>
<td></td>
<td>Irregular past simple verbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2C Red faces p20</td>
<td>Past continuous</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2D Which school? p22</td>
<td></td>
<td>School facilities</td>
<td></td>
<td>Asking for information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3A Flatmates p26</td>
<td>Countable &amp; uncountable nouns with <em>some, any &amp; no</em></td>
<td><em>House &amp; home</em></td>
<td></td>
<td>/h/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3B Another country p28</td>
<td><em>Some, many &amp; most</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3C Home town p30</td>
<td>Quantifiers</td>
<td>Towns</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3D Lost! p32</td>
<td></td>
<td>Places in a town</td>
<td></td>
<td>To</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4A Online dating p36</td>
<td>Present simple, frequency adverbs &amp; phrases</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Final -s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4B Wedding bells p38</td>
<td>Present continuous, stative verbs</td>
<td>Weddings</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4C At the movies p40</td>
<td></td>
<td>Relationship verbs</td>
<td></td>
<td>/i/ &amp; /i:/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4D Going out p42</td>
<td>Prepositions of time</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Invitations &amp; suggestions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5A Tourist trail p46</td>
<td>Future 1 (future plans)</td>
<td>Compound nouns</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5B Planes p48</td>
<td></td>
<td>Air travel</td>
<td></td>
<td>Intonation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5C A weekend break p50</td>
<td>Future 2 (<em>will</em>)</td>
<td>Hotels</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5D Holiday heaven p52</td>
<td></td>
<td>Verb patterns</td>
<td></td>
<td>Silent letters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6A Junk food p56</td>
<td>Modifiers</td>
<td>Food</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6B Slow food p58</td>
<td>Comparatives</td>
<td>Adjectives (opposites)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Word stress 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6C Coffee break p60</td>
<td>Superlatives</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6D Class meal p62</td>
<td></td>
<td>Eating out</td>
<td></td>
<td>Making a reservation in a restaurant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 Language reference p64</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Emphatic stress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading &amp; Listening</td>
<td>Speaking</td>
<td>Writing (in the Workbook)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1A R Mother love L</td>
<td>Talking about your family &amp; friends Describing a typical family in your country</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1B L A conversation about an old photograph</td>
<td>Discussing friendship Communication activity: Friends Reunited Did you know? Friends Reunited website</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1C R Who would you like as a neighbour? L</td>
<td>Talking about your neighbours Ranking famous people as good/bad neighbours</td>
<td>A personal message for a website</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1D R Newspaper advertisements L</td>
<td>Talking about different ways of making contact Roleplay: phone messages</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2A L Three people talk about their school days</td>
<td>Talking about your school days Describing a favourite teacher</td>
<td>A story 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2B R Schools in Europe: The Republic of Ireland</td>
<td>Talking about schools in your town Comparing schools now &amp; in the past</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2C R Web page: an internet discussion group</td>
<td>Describing pictures Discussing ways parents &amp; children can embarrass each other</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2D L Asking for information in a language school</td>
<td>Choosing a language school Roleplay: asking for information Did you know? The English language</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3A L A conversation between two friends about where they live</td>
<td>Roleplay: solving problems in a shared flat</td>
<td>A description of your town</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3B R Scots abroad</td>
<td>Discussing emigration Did you know? The United Kingdom</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3C R Web page: <a href="http://www.livinginmontreal.com">www.livinginmontreal.com</a></td>
<td>Describing &amp; comparing towns</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3D L Asking for directions in Newcastle</td>
<td>Comparing Newcastle to towns in your country Roleplay: directions</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4A R An internet dating agency advertisement</td>
<td>Discussing internet dating Discussing &amp; choosing a dating agency advertisement</td>
<td>An email to a friend</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4B R If you ask me ...</td>
<td>Describing a wedding Did you know? Wedding traditions</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4C L A description of a film (You’ve Got Mail)</td>
<td>Inventing a film dialogue Communication activity: retelling film stories</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4D L Two phone calls: arranging to go out</td>
<td>Describing an imaginary date with a famous person Discussing dating rules in your country</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5A R The ruins of Machu Picchu</td>
<td>Talking about tourism in your country Planning improvements in your town for tourists</td>
<td>An email to arrange a trip</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5B L Three conversations at the airport</td>
<td>Describing a journey Roleplay: on a plane</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5C L A radio programme about the worst hotel in Britain</td>
<td>Describing the best/worst hotel you have stayed in Did you know? Las Vegas hotels</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5D R Web page: <a href="http://www.heavenholidays.com">www.heavenholidays.com</a></td>
<td>Planning a trip for visitors around your country</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6A R Eating the Elvis Presley way</td>
<td>Planning a theme restaurant</td>
<td>A review of a restaurant</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6B R Quiz: Are you a foodie? L</td>
<td>Discussing a quiz</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6C R Coffee break</td>
<td>Talking about your favourite drinks Did you know? Starbucks</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6D L Two phone calls: making restaurant reservations L</td>
<td>Talking about restaurants in your town Roleplay: in a restaurant</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson</td>
<td>Grammar</td>
<td>Vocabulary</td>
<td>Functional language</td>
<td>Pronunciation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7A</td>
<td>Rising stars p66</td>
<td>Present perfect simple</td>
<td>Work</td>
<td>/æ/ &amp; /ʌ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7B</td>
<td>Hard work p68</td>
<td>Present perfect simple with already &amp; yet</td>
<td>Verb collocations (work)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7C</td>
<td>Job selection p70</td>
<td>Adjectives &amp; nouns (personality)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7D</td>
<td>The recruitment agency p72</td>
<td>Curriculum vitae</td>
<td>Advice</td>
<td>Email &amp; website addresses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 Language reference p74</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8A</td>
<td>The futurological conference p76</td>
<td>Predictions 1 (may, might &amp; will)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Constructions 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8B</td>
<td>Space tourists p78</td>
<td>Predictions 2 (maybe, probably, certainly, etc)</td>
<td>Compound nouns with numbers</td>
<td>Word stress 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8C</td>
<td>Help! p80</td>
<td>Computer actions</td>
<td>Giving instructions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8D</td>
<td>Great ideas p82</td>
<td>Present tense in future time clauses</td>
<td>Adjectives with infinitives</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 Language reference p84</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Diphthongs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9A</td>
<td>What's on p86</td>
<td>-ing &amp; -ed adjectives</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9B</td>
<td>Reality TV p88</td>
<td>Passive</td>
<td>TV programmes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9C</td>
<td>Oscars and raspberries p90</td>
<td>Passive with agent</td>
<td>Films</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9D</td>
<td>Box office p92</td>
<td></td>
<td>At the box office</td>
<td>Dates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 Language reference p94</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10A</td>
<td>Animal lovers p96</td>
<td>Present perfect simple with for &amp; since</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10B</td>
<td>Stress p98</td>
<td>Present perfect simple for unfinished time</td>
<td>Collocations with get</td>
<td>/ɔi/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10C</td>
<td>Marathon men p100</td>
<td>Present perfect simple with been &amp; gone</td>
<td>Sport</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10D</td>
<td>Doctor, doctor p102</td>
<td></td>
<td>At the doctor's</td>
<td>Sentence stress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 Language reference p104</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11A</td>
<td>Things p106</td>
<td>Infinitive of purpose</td>
<td>Personal possessions</td>
<td>Paraphrasing /θ/ &amp; /ð/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11B</td>
<td>Fashion victim p108</td>
<td>Modals of obligation (present time)</td>
<td>Clothes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11C</td>
<td>Camden Market p110</td>
<td>Modals of obligation (past time)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11D</td>
<td>At the mall p112</td>
<td>FIt, go with &amp; suit</td>
<td>In a clothes shop</td>
<td>Word linking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 Language reference p114</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12A</td>
<td>Around the world p116</td>
<td>Prepositions of movement</td>
<td>Phrasal verbs</td>
<td>/ɔi/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12B</td>
<td>Let's dance p118</td>
<td>Relative clauses</td>
<td>Festivals</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12C</td>
<td>Global English p120</td>
<td>Modals of obligation (present time)</td>
<td>Countries &amp; languages</td>
<td>British &amp; American accents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12D</td>
<td>Global issues p122</td>
<td>Global Issues</td>
<td>Agreeing &amp; disagreeing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 Language reference p124</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Communication activities p126</td>
<td>Tapescripts p133</td>
<td>Unit reviews p148</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading &amp; Listening</td>
<td>Speaking</td>
<td>Writing (in the Workbook)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7A L A radio programme about people who have met celebrities</td>
<td>Describing &amp; guessing jobs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7B R Life on the other side</td>
<td>Talking about your experiences of work Describing an imaginary life</td>
<td>A letter of application Did you know? Salaries in the UK</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7C R An article about horoscopes &amp; work Horoscopes</td>
<td>Deciding what qualities are needed for different jobs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7D L An interview in a recruitment agency</td>
<td>Talking about finding a job in your town Roleplay: careers advice</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8A R A conference programme</td>
<td>Talking about science fiction films Giving a thirty-second talk</td>
<td>A note giving instructions</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8B L A description of Star Quest, a TV game show</td>
<td>Deciding who is the best candidate for Star Quest</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8C L A conversation about how to send an email</td>
<td>Talking about how you use computers Did you know? Computer games in the USA</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8D L Descriptions of gadgets R A great idea?</td>
<td>Discussing &amp; choosing gadgets on a website</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9A L A radio programme about entertainment in London</td>
<td>Talking about entertainment in London &amp; your town Did you know? Leisure activities in the UK</td>
<td>A review of a film</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9B R Reality TV – love it or leave it</td>
<td>Planning a reality TV show</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9C R Oscars night</td>
<td>Talking about going to the cinema Acting a scene from Titanic</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9D L Four people buy tickets on the phone</td>
<td>Roleplay: at the box office Describing a concert</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10A R The United States of animals</td>
<td>Talking about pets &amp; animals Communication activity: guessing animals</td>
<td>A story 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10B R An article about stress</td>
<td>Discussing stressful jobs Ranking stressful experiences</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10C L A news report about the marathon runners, Ranulph Fiennes &amp; Mike Stroud</td>
<td>Talking about how fit you are Did you know? Sport in Australia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10D L Two doctors’ appointments</td>
<td>Roleplay: at the doctor's</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11A L Two people talk about things they wanted when they were younger</td>
<td>Describing a favourite possession Communication activity: describing &amp; guessing objects</td>
<td>A description of a favourite possession</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11B R Office worker flip flops out of job</td>
<td>Discussing clothes &amp; appearance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11C R Home comforts</td>
<td>Giving a presentation on shopping in your town Did you know? Shopping in London</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11D L A conversation in a shopping mall</td>
<td>Roleplay: in a clothes shop</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12A L A news report about the American adventurer, Steve Fossett</td>
<td>Discussing famous explorers Planning a &quot;round the world&quot; trip</td>
<td>An opinion composition</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12B R An email describing Trinidad carnival</td>
<td>Talking about festivals Describing a festival</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12C R English as an International Language – no problem, OK?</td>
<td>Talking about the English language in your country</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12D L Four conversations at a party</td>
<td>Discussing global issues Did you know? Oxfam</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1A | Family life

VOCABULARY & SPEAKING: family & friends

1 Match the words in the box to the definitions.

aunt  colleague  cousin  daughter
grandfather  mother-in-law  pet
neighbour  nephew  niece  son
son-in-law  uncle  best friend

1 neighbour
1 a person who lives very near you
2 a person you work with
3 an animal that lives with the family
4 your male child
5 your aunt’s (or your uncle’s) child
6 your brother’s (or your sister’s) daughter
7 your closest friend
8 your daughter’s husband
9 your mother’s (or your father’s) sister

2 Work in pairs. Write definitions for the other words in the box.

3 Write the names of four people who are important to you.

Work in pairs. Tell your partner as much as possible about these people.

Tara is my niece. She is nineteen years old and she studies at university ...

READING

1 Read the article about two families. Match the photos A–D to the stories.

2 Read the article again and answer the questions.

1 Where was Gemma born?
2 When was her wedding?
3 Where is her husband from?
4 What’s her daughter’s name?
5 How many children are there in Judy’s family?
6 What is the family home when they travel?
7 What is the youngest child’s name?
8 Where was the family’s first show?

Gemma Burford Enolengila

Gemma was born in 1978 in a quiet village in the south of England. Her mother worked in a library and her father was an accountant. When she was a student at Oxford University, she travelled to Tanzania and met her future husband, Lesikar, for the first time. The couple got married in 2003. When they had a baby (a daughter, Lucia) they decided to go and live in Tanzania. ‘I want my daughter to have the best life possible,’ said Gemma.

Lesikar is a Masai and lives in a village near Arusha in the north of the country. There is no electricity in the home and they walk almost a kilometre to get water. Gemma cooks simple dinners of corn and vegetables and she washes the clothes in a bucket. There is a small primary school in the village, but Gemma and Lesikar will also teach Lucia at home.

Judy Boehmer

Judy had her first child, Adam, 27 years ago. She now has four sons and seven daughters and a pet dog, Bosco, but she wants more boys. Judy and her husband, Larry, live in Atlanta, Georgia, but they also have a 10-metre-long motor home. The family sometimes travels more than 40,000 kilometres a year for their work. The children do not go to school, but they study at home with their parents.

The Boehmers are a circus family and all the children take part in the show. They do different kinds of juggling and Margaret, the youngest, stands on one leg in her mother’s hand. The first show of the Boehmer Family Jugglers was at a theme park in Iowa in 1989, and they now perform all over America.
Close your book. How much can you remember about the two families?

Do you think that the life of these two families is good for the children? Why or why not?

**GRAMMAR: questions with to be**

We make questions with the verb to be by putting the verb before the subject.

**Yes/No questions**

*Is she married?*

*Were you at school yesterday?*

**Short answers**

We can answer yes/no questions with short answers.

*Yes, I am.*  
*No, I'm not.*

*Yes, she is.*  
*No, she isn't.*

*Yes, he was.*  
*No, he wasn't.*

*Yes, they were.*  
*No, they weren't.*

**Wh- questions**

We can put question words before the verb.

*Where were you born?*

*What is her daughter's name?*

See Language Reference page 14

1. Match the questions in column A with the short answers in column B.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Are you married?</td>
<td>a  Yes, I was.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is your family very large?</td>
<td>b  Yes, it is.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Were you born in this town?</td>
<td>c  Yes, there are.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is your father a good cook?</td>
<td>d  No, I'm not.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are your parents from this town?</td>
<td>e  No, he isn't.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are there many people with the same name as you?</td>
<td>f  No, they aren't.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Change the answers to the questions in exercise 1 so that they are true for you.

3. Rearrange the words to make questions.

1. How many people are there in your family?
2. Are family how in many people there your ?
3. Are names their what ?
4. Are how old they ?
5. Are hobbies their what ?
6. Born parents were where your ?
7. Family in is person the who youngest your ?
8. Family holiday last was when your ?


**SPEAKING**

1. Listen to a description of a typical English family. Put the topics in the order that you hear them.

   **Children**
   How many children are there? What are their names? How old are they? What are their hobbies?

   **Family pet**
   Is there a family pet? What is it? What is it called?

   **Food**
   When does the family eat together? What is their favourite food?

   **Weekends and holidays**
   What does the family do at the weekend? What do they do in the holidays?

   **Parents**
   What are the parents' names? How old are they? What are their jobs? What are their interests?

   **TV**
   What are the family's favourite TV programmes?

2. Work in pairs. Think about a typical family in your country. Make notes using the questions in exercise 1.

3. Work in groups. Describe your typical family to each other.
Where are they now?

Speaking

'A true friend is the best possession in the world.'

1 Translate the proverb above into your language. Are there any similar proverbs in your language?

2 Work in pairs. How many different ways can you complete the sentence below?

A true friend ...
... always listens to you.
... makes you laugh.
... knows you well.

Vocabulary: verb collocations (friendship)

1 Put the text in the correct order.
☐ each other very often, but we keep
go good friends. We come from similar
☐ David is one of my oldest
d backgrounds and we have a lot
☐ friends. We were at college together. We didn't get
☐ in common. He lives in Spain now, so we don't see
☐ in touch by phone and email.
☐ on well at first, but later we became

2 Listen to the recording to check your answers.

3 Complete the questions with a word in bold from exercise 1.

1 What sort of people do you _____ on well with?
2 How often do you and your best friend _____ each other?
3 Do you _____ a lot in common with your best friend? What?
4 How do you _____ in touch with friends in other towns or countries?

Listen to the conversation to check your answers.
GRAMMAR: questions with auxiliary verbs

**Present simple & past simple**
We make questions in the present simple and past simple with an auxiliary verb (do/does/did) and the infinitive. We put the auxiliary verb before the subject and we put the infinitive after the subject.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>question word</th>
<th>auxiliary</th>
<th>subject</th>
<th>infinitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Where</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>live?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What</td>
<td>does</td>
<td>he</td>
<td>want?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>they</td>
<td>arrive?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Other forms**
All other verb forms (for example, present continuous, can, will) already have an auxiliary verb and a main verb. We put the auxiliary verb before the subject and we put the main verb after the subject.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>question word</th>
<th>auxiliary</th>
<th>subject</th>
<th>main verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>What</td>
<td>are</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>doing?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where</td>
<td>can</td>
<td>we</td>
<td>meet?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When</td>
<td>will</td>
<td>we</td>
<td>know?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Language Reference page 14

1. Complete the questions with an auxiliary verb from the box.
   - does (x2)  did  is  was

   1. What ____ your best friend’s name?
   2. Where ____ she/he live?
   3. What ____ she/he do?
   4. Where and when ____ you first meet?
   5. When ____ the last time you met?

2. Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions in exercise 1.

3. Look at the text below. Some of the text is missing. Prepare questions to ask about the missing information.

Christine Smith left school in 1976. She studied (1) ____ (What?) at Leeds University and then got a job (2) ____ (Where?). When she was in America, she met (3) ____ (Who?) at a party at the White House. He worked for (4) ____ (Who?)? They started going out together and they got married (5) ____ (When?). They now have (6) ____ (How many?) children. Christine and her husband now live (7) ____ (Where?). She works for (8) ____ (Who?) and he is writing (9) ____ (What?)? Christine wants to get in touch with (10) ____ (Who?) and promises to reply to all emails.

4. Work in pairs, A and B.

A: Turn to page 129.  B: Turn to page 127.
Ask and answer the questions in exercise 3 to complete the missing information.

**Pronunciation: contractions 1**

1. 1.4 Listen to these contractions.
   - do not → don’t
   - did not → didn’t
   - what is → what’s

2. Make contractions from these words.
   1. does not  3. that is  5. were not  2. he has  4. was not  6. who is

3. 1.5 Listen to the contractions and repeat.

**Speaking**

1. Correct the grammatical mistakes in the questions.
   1. Who you did read about?
   2. Is she/he be married?
   3. How old she/he is?
   4. How many children does she/he has?
   5. Where she/he is living now?
   6. What do she/he do?

2. Work in groups of four, A–D. You are going to read about the people in Christine’s photo.

   A: Turn to page 126.  C: Turn to page 129.
   B: Turn to page 127.  D: Turn to page 131.

   Use the questions in exercise 1 to find out about Christine’s old friends. Who do you think Christine will get in touch with first?

**Did you know?**

1. Work in pairs. Read the text and answer the questions.

**FRIENDS REUNITED** is one of the most popular websites in Britain. It has seven million members and more than three million people visit the site every day.

People visit the site because they want to find out about old friends. You can read news about friends from school or university. You can look at photos of these people now and you can send voice and email messages. After visiting the site, many people organize reunions with their old friends.

- Have you got a similar website in your country?
- Are you still in touch with friends from your last school?
**1c | Neighbours**

**Speaking**

1. Work in pairs. Ask and answer these questions about your neighbours.
   - What are their names?
   - What do they do?
   - Where do they come from?
   - Are they good neighbours? Why or why not?

**Reading**

1. Read the magazine article. Put the information in the correct order.
   - British men like the pop singer, Kylie Minogue.
   - Many British people would like to live next door to a gardening expert.
   - Kylie lives in a fashionable part of London.
   - Mr Titchmarsh’s neighbours do not know him very well.
   - Most people do not want to live next door to the prime minister.
   - Alan Titchmarsh is a well-known British gardening expert.

---

**Life**

**WHO WOULD YOU LIKE AS … a neighbour?**

A recent opinion poll asked 1,000 people in Britain this question. The surprise winner of the poll was Alan Titchmarsh – a gardening expert on BBC TV – with 29% of the vote.

The British are very interested in gardening and Titchmarsh is very popular. He is a best-selling writer and a famous TV face. He is even in Madame Tussaud’s. To find out more about him, we spoke to some of Mr Titchmarsh’s neighbours. We did not learn very much. ‘He’s a very quiet man and we don’t see him much,’ said one neighbour. ‘We don’t ask him for help with our gardens,’ said another. ‘He’s a very busy man.’

Titchmarsh, a very private man, lives in an eighteenth-century farmhouse in a small village in the south of England. Like many people, he likes quiet neighbours and he is happy where he lives.

The top woman in the poll was the Australian pop singer, Kylie Minogue. 85% of her voters were men. Ms Minogue lives in fashionable Chelsea in the west of London. Her neighbours include her sister Dannii, pop stars Madonna and Bob Geldof, supermodel Liz Hurley, Sean Connery and Formula One king, Bernie Ecclestone. It is an excellent place for star-spotters and Kylie Minogue fans.

The British like gardening and attractive Australian pop singers, but, it seems, they do not want to live next door to their prime minister. He got only 3% of the votes in the poll. Is this because people do not want to live in Downing Street? Or is it because they do not like the prime minister?
GRAMMAR: how & what questions

We can combine how and what with other words to begin questions.

How + adjectives/adverbs/much/many
How popular is the prime minister?
How often do you speak to your neighbours?
How many children do they have?

What + noun/kind of/sort of/type of
What colour is your car?
What time do you get up?
What kind of neighbour is he?

See Language Reference page 14

1 Complete the questions for the answers below.

1 How ___________________________?
I usually drive quite fast, especially on the motorway.

2 What ___________________________?
My father’s hair is grey.

3 How ___________________________
I know my teacher very well.

4 What ___________________________?
I usually have dinner at about eight o’clock.

5 How ___________________________
I have six cousins.

6 What ___________________________?
I don’t like pop music very much, but I like everything else.

2 Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions in exercise 1.

3 You have new neighbours and you want to know more about them. Write four questions that you would like to ask. Use the prompts below to help you.

• What time ... ?
• What kind of ... ?
• How much ... ?
• How many ... ?
• How often ... ?
• How old ... ?

4 Work in pairs and compare your questions. Which is the most interesting question?

PRONUNCIATION: the alphabet

1 Look at the three lists of letters. In each list, the letters use the same sound. Choose a letter from the box to complete each list.

G I J O Q R U W X Y

1 /ei/ A H ___ K
2 /i/ B C D E ___ P T V
3 /e/ F L M N S ___ Z

2 1.6 Listen to the recording to check your answers.

3 1.7 Now listen to the other letters from the box and repeat after the recording.

4 1.8 Listen to a list of the six most common surnames in Britain and write them down.

5 1.9 Now listen to the recording to check your spelling.

SPEAKING

1 Make a list of five famous people from your country (film stars, musicians, politicians, sports stars, TV personalities, artists, business people).

Now put the people in your list in order
(1 = best neighbour → 5 = worst neighbour).

2 Work in small groups. Talk about the people in your list and explain why you think they would be good or bad neighbours.

Useful language

X is probably a good/bad neighbour because ...
I would/wouldn’t like to live next door to Y because ...
I imagine that Z is very ...
Making contact

**Speaking**

1. Work in pairs. Discuss these questions.
   - Which of the ways shown in the pictures below do you use most often to contact other people?
   - Which do you prefer? Why?

2. Think of the last three phone calls that you made.
   - Who did you call? (a friend/business call?)
   - Why did you call her/him? (to give some news/ask a question?)

   I phoned my brother because he is not well at the moment.
   I phoned my friend, Karen, because I wanted to invite her for dinner.

   Work in pairs and compare your answers.

**Functional language 1: phone numbers**

1. **1.10** Listen to a phone message and choose the best answer.

   1. To listen to the menu, press
      - a)   b)   c)   

   2. For general enquiries, press
      - a)   b)   c)   

2. Kate's home phone number is
   - a) 0307 775 3046   b) 0307 755 3846   c) 0307 755 3046

3. Kate's mobile number is
   - a) 0477 320188   b) 0477 328118   c) 0477 321880

4. Look at tapescript 1.10 on page 133 to check your answers.

5. Work in pairs, A and B. You are going to practise saying phone numbers.
   - A: Turn to page 126. B: Turn to page 128.
   - Listen to the phone numbers your partner says and write them down.

**Reading**

1. Read the advertisements opposite and put them into four groups.
   - Accommodation
   - English language lessons
   - Jobs
   - Making friends

2. Read the advertisements again and answer the questions.

   1. What does Mary teach?
   2. What is the name of the recruitment agency?
   3. Where does Mike live?
   4. When are the Kung Fu classes?
   5. What does Patrick want?
   6. How much does the room near London Bridge cost?
   7. Where can you get free accommodation?
   8. What languages can you practise on Thursday evenings?

3. Imagine that you are in London and you want to improve your English. Which advertisements would you choose and why?
FUNCTIONAL LANGUAGE 2: phone messages

1. **1.15** Listen and complete the phone messages.

This is 641480. I'm afraid there's no one to take your call right (1) ____. Please leave your (2) ____ and (3) ____ after the tone and I'll call you back.

Ah, yes, hello. Mr Trotter, my (4) ____ is Davina and I'm (5) ____ in your advertisement. Could you call me back, please? Any time before ...

Stuart here. I'm not home at the (6) ____, so please leave a (7) ____ after the beep. Thanks.

Hello, good morning. (8) ____ is Bella Moor, that's Moor - M - double O - R. I'm (9) ____ about the Kung Fu classes. You can call me back on my (10) ____, that's 0447 ...

2. Write your own answering machine message. Use the language in exercise 1 to help you.

**Roleplay**

3. Work in pairs, A and B.

A: You are going to telephone another student. First of all, decide why you want to call them. Use the language in exercise 1 and in the Useful language box below to prepare what you want to say. Listen to the message on their answering machine and then leave your own message.

B: Another student is going to telephone you. Read out the answering machine message that you have prepared and then listen to the message that your partner leaves. Write down their name, phone number and any other important information.

**Useful language**

Hi, this is ...
Hello, it's ... here.
I'm calling about ...
I'm interested in ...
Can/Could you call me back later?
My (mobile) number is ...
I'm on ...

4. When you have finished, change roles. Then change partners and repeat the task with other students in the class.
**GRAMMAR**

**Yes/No questions**

**Questions with to be**
We make questions with the verb to be by putting the verb before the subject.

| verb | subject | Is   | he or she | French?  
|------|---------|------|-----------|---------
| Are  | you     |      |           | married? |

We can answer these questions with short answers.

*Is he French? Yes, he is.*

*Are they married? No they aren't.*

**Present simple to be**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Am</th>
<th>I</th>
<th>married?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Is</td>
<td>she/he/it</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are</td>
<td>you/we/they</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past simple to be**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Was</th>
<th>I</th>
<th>at school yesterday?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Were</td>
<td>you/we/they</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Short answer**

- **Yes,** I am.  
- **No,** I am not.
- **Yes,** she is.  
- **No,** she is not.
- **Yes,** he is.  
- **No,** he is not.
- **Yes,** you are.  
- **No,** you are not.
- **Yes,** we are.  
- **No,** we are not.
- **Yes,** they are.  
- **No,** they are not.

**Questions with present simple & past simple**
We make questions in the present simple and past simple with an auxiliary verb (do/does/did) and the infinitive without to. We put do/does/did before the subject and we put the infinitive after the subject.

| auxiliary | subject | Do you like pop music?  
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Does</td>
<td>she</td>
<td>live in London?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Did</td>
<td>she</td>
<td>enjoy the party?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We can answer these questions with short answers.

*Do you like pop music? Yes, I do.*  
*Does she live in London? No, she doesn't.*

**Present simple**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Do</th>
<th>I</th>
<th>like pop music?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Does</td>
<td>she/he/it</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>you/we/they</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past simple**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Did</th>
<th>I</th>
<th>go to the cinema last night?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Did</td>
<td>she/he/it</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Did</td>
<td>you/we/they</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Short answer**

| I    | do/did.  
|------|----------|
| she/he/it | doesn't/didn't.  
| you/we/they | don't/didn't.  

**Questions with other verb forms**
All other verb forms (for example, present continuous, can, will) already have an auxiliary verb and a main verb. We put the auxiliary verb before the subject and we put the main verb after the subject.

| auxiliary | subject | main verb  
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Are</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>listening?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Can</td>
<td>we</td>
<td>start?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Will      | she     | phone?    

We can answer these questions with short answers.

*Are you listening? Yes, I am.*  
*Can we start? No, we can't.*  
*Will she phone? No, she won't.*

**Wh- questions**
We can put question words before the verb. The most common question words are: what, which, when, where, why, who and how.

*What* is her daughter's name?  
*Who* was your first boyfriend?  
*When* did they arrive?

We can combine how and what with other words to begin questions.

| **How** + | adjectives (far, old, popular, tall)  
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>adverbs (often, well, etc)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>much (much money, much time)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>many (many children, many cousins)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **How old** | is Sarah?  
| **How often** | do you travel by train?  
| **How many** | CDs does he have?  
| **What** + | noun (colour, time, etc)  
|           | kind of/sort of/type of              |
| **What colour** | is their car?  
| **What time** | is it?  
| **What kind** | of pizza do you like?  

14
FUNCTIONAL LANGUAGE

Phone messages

This is 0307 775 3046.
This is Kate Woods.
You have reached the voicemail of ... Thank you for calling ...

I'm afraid there is no one to take your call right now.
I'm not home/in the office at the moment.

Please leave your name and number after the beep. I'll call you back. Could you call me back, please?

WORD LIST

Family

aunt n C ** /aunt/
cousin n C ** /kəzən/
daughter n C *** /ˈdɔːtər/
grandfather n C * /ˈgrændfɑːðər/
grandmother n C * /ˈgrændməθər/
husband n C *** /ˈhʌzbənd/
mother-in-law n C /ˈmʌðərˈɪnˌlɔː/ 
nephew n C /ˈnɛʃu/ 
niece n C /ˈniːs/ 
pet n C * /pɛt/ 
son n C *** /son/ 
son-in-law n C /ˈsɔnɪnˌlɔː/ 
uncle n C * /ˈʌŋkl/ 
wife n C *** /waɪf/

Friendship

best friend /best frend/ 
get on (well) with (sb) /ɡɛt ˈɒn wɪð/ 
have a lot in common with (sb) /hæv ə lɔt ɪn kəmən wɪð/ 
keep in touch with (sb) /kɪp ɪn ˈtʃuʃ wɪð/ 
neighbour n C ** /ˈnəʊbər/ 

Other words & phrases

accommodation n U *** /əkəˈmeɪdəʃən/ 
accountant n C /əˈkɔʊntənt/ 
advert(isement) n C /əˈvɜːdɪsment/ 
attractive adj ** /ˈatræktɪv/ 
background n C ** /ˈbækɡraʊnd/ 
best-selling adj /ˈbest ˈsɛlɪŋ/ 
blonde adj /ˈblɒnd/ 
bucket n C /ˈbʌkt/ 
circus n C /ˈsɜːkəs/ 
clothes n pl *** /ˈkləʊðz/ 
colleague n C /ˈkɒlɪdʒ/ 
college n C/U *** /ˈkɒlɪdʒ/ 
concert n C ** /ˈkɒnɜːt/ 
contact v *** /ˈkəntækt/ 
corn n U /kɔrn/ 
couple n C *** /ˈkʌpl/ 
doll n C /dɒl/ 
dress n C ** /dres/ 
electricity n U ** /ˌelɛkˈtrɪsəti/ 
email n C *** /eɪməl/ 
enquiry n C /ˈenkwəri/ 
experience n U *** /ɪkˈspɜːriəns/ 
expert n C *** /ˈekspɜːrt/ 
famous adj *** /ˈfeɪməs/ 
fan n C ** /fæn/ 
farmhouse n C /ˈfɑːrmaʊz/ 
fashionable adj ** /ˈfæʃənəbl/ 
find out v /fʊnd ˈaʊt/ 
fit adj * /fɪt/ 
flat n C ** /flæt/ 
flowery adj /ˈflɔʊərɪ/ 
gardening n U /ˈɡɑːrdɪŋ/ 
guitar n C ** /ˈɡɪtrə/ 
hobby n C /ˈhɒbi/ 

popular adj *** /ˈpɒpjələr/ 
punctuate v ** /ˈprʌktʃuət/ 
pres v *** /prɛz/ 
primary school n C /ˈprɪməri skɔːl/ 
prime minister n C ** /ˈprɒmɪsənt/ 
private adj *** /ˈpraɪvət/ 
pub n C ** /pʌb/ 
recent adj *** /ˈriːsənt/ 
recruitment agency /rɪˈkrʌmtmənt əˈrɪtni/ 
secretary n C * /ˈsɛkrətri/ 
shirt n C *** /ʃɜːt/ 
show n C *** /ʃəʊ/ 
soap opera n C /ˈsəʊp əˈpɒrə/ 
staff n U *** /stɑːf/ 
surprise n C/U *** /sərˈpraɪz/ 
temporary adj *** /ˈtempərəri/ 
theme park n C /ˈθiːm ぱːk/ 
tone n C * /tーン/ 
traditional adj *** /trəˈdiʃənəl/ 
typical adj *** /ˈtɪpɪkl/ 
university n C/U *** /ʊnɪvɜːrˈsɪtɪ/ 
urgently adv /ˈɜːrɡəntli/ 
vegetable n C *** /ˈvetəbəl/ 

village n C *** /ˈvɪlɪdʒ/ 
voicemail n U /ˈvəʊmɪkl/ 
vote n C/v *** /vəʊt/ 
website n C /ˈwestə/ 
wedding n C ** /ˈwedɪŋ/ 
winner n C ** /ˈwɪnər/ 

wonder v *** /ˈwʌndər/ 

Abbreviations

n noun 
v verb 
adj adjective 
adv adverb 
sub somebody 
sth something 
C countable 
U uncountable 
pl plural 
s singular 

*** the most common and basic words 
** very common words 
* fairly common words
2A | School days

GRAMMAR: past simple

1 Complete the table. Look at tapescripts 1.16–1.18 on page 134 to check your answers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>infinitive</th>
<th>past simple</th>
<th>infinitive</th>
<th>past simple</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hate</td>
<td>(1) _____</td>
<td>study</td>
<td>(5) _____</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>listen</td>
<td>(2) _____</td>
<td>talk</td>
<td>(6) _____</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leave</td>
<td>(3) _____</td>
<td>teach</td>
<td>(7) _____</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>love</td>
<td>(4) _____</td>
<td>try</td>
<td>(8) _____</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Now put the verbs in the table into four groups.

a Regular verbs: infinitive + -ed _listened_

b Regular verbs: infinitive + -d _____

c Regular verbs: infinitive ending in -y – i + ed _____

d Irregular verbs _____

We make negatives with didn’t (did not) + infinitive.

I didn’t want to leave school.

We make questions with did + subject + infinitive.

Where did you go to school?

Did you like school?

See LANGUAGE Reference page 24

3 Complete the conversation. Put the verbs in brackets into the past simple.

A: Where (1) did you go (you / go) to school?
B: My father (2) _______ (work) for a multinational company and we (3) _______ (live) in lots of different countries, so I (4) _______ (go) to five different schools.

A: (5) _______ (you / enjoy) your school days?
B: No, I didn’t. Not really. I (6) _______ (not have) many friends because we (7) _______ (not stay) long in one place. I (8) _______ (leave) one school after six months!

A: (9) _______ (you / do) well in your exams?
B: Yes, I did. Because I (10) _______ (not / go) out with friends, I (11) _______ (study) a lot in the evenings and at the weekends. I (12) _______ (not / get) top grades, but I (13) _______ (get) a place at Cambridge University.

A: What was that like? (14) _______ (you / like) it?
B: Yes. I (15) _______ (think) it was great.

4 Work in pairs. Write a similar conversation.

VOCABULARY & SPEAKING: adjectives with prepositions

1 Which sentences have a positive (+) meaning and which have a negative (−) meaning?

1 I was good at mathematics. +
2 I was bored with my school. −
3 I was afraid of the older children.
4 I was fond of my science teacher.
5 I was interested in science and technology.
6 I was terrible at arriving on time.
7 I was keen on sports and swimming.
8 I was worried about my grades.

2 Think about your experience of school. Change the sentences in exercise 1 so that they are true for you.

3 Work in pairs. Compare your sentences. Were your experiences similar or different?

LISTENING

1 1.16–1.18 Listen to three people talking about their school days. Match the speakers 1–3 to the topics a–c below.

a my favourite subject
b my favourite teacher
c my problems at school

2 1.16–1.18 Listen to the recording again and complete column A with a phrase from column B.

A 1 I never missed
2 I always got
3 I was terrible at
4 I failed
5 I never did
6 I was good at
7 I didn’t want to leave

B a good grades.
b my exams.
c my homework.
d lessons.
e most subjects.
f music.
g school.

3 Did you have any similar experiences at school?
PRONUNCIATION: regular past simple verbs

1 When we say regular past simple forms, we usually add the sound /t/ or /d/ to the infinitive. We do not need an extra syllable. Listen to these examples.

open /oʊpən/ → opened /oʊpənd/
love /lʌv/ → loved /lʌvd/
try /traɪ/ → tried /traɪd/

But if the infinitive ends in /t/ or /d/, we do need to add an extra syllable (/id/) when we say the regular past form. Listen to these examples.

want /wɒnt/ → wanted /wɒntid/
decide /dɪsəd/ → decided /dɪsədɪd/

2 Put the verbs in the box into two groups: no extra syllable (NS) and extra syllable (ES).

arrived NS ended hated helped
needed studied waited worked

3 Listen to the recording to check your answers.

SPEAKING

1 Do you know any films or TV programmes about schools and teachers?

2 You are going to talk about a teacher that you really liked. Use these questions to help you.

- What was the teacher's name?
- What did she/he teach?
- Where did she/he teach?
- How often did you have lessons with her/him?
- What did she/he look like?
- Why did you like her/him?
- Do you remember a particular moment with this teacher?
- What happened?

3 Work in groups. Describe the teacher that you really liked to your group.
2B | Irish schools

Speaking

1 Work in pairs. Discuss these questions.
- Are there any big differences between the schools in your town? Are some schools better than others? If so, why?
- What is your idea of a good school?

Vocabulary: education

1 Complete the sentences with a word from the box.

age certificate compulsory
punishment results sex system

1 Some schools in England are for boys and girls and some are single ______.
2 In the English education ______, there are private schools and state schools.
3 Some subjects, like English and maths, are ______ until the age of sixteen in England.
4 English children must sometimes stay in class at break as a ______.
5 The minimum leaving ______ in England is sixteen, but most students continue for another two years.
6 There is no leaving ______ in England, but many students take ‘A level’ exams when they are eighteen.
7 School students in England get their exam ______ in the summer holidays after they leave school.

2 1.21 Listen to the recording to check your answers.

3 Change the sentences in exercise 1 so that they are true for your country.

Reading

1 Read a magazine article about education in Ireland. Match the paragraphs 1–4 to the headings a–d below.

1 = b

a Rich and poor, boys and girls
b A success story
c School subjects
d Traditional teaching
2 Read the article again and find one piece of information to show that each statement is true.

1 The exam results are good.
2 Ireland has a good education system.
3 Teaching in Ireland used to be very traditional.
4 Irish boys and girls used to have very different experiences of school.
5 Education in Ireland is a woman’s world.
6 Irish students study many different subjects.

3 Are there any similarities between education in Ireland and education in your country?

**GRAMMAR: used to**

We use used to + infinitive to talk about past states.

*Latin and Greek used to be important school subjects.*

We also use used to + infinitive to talk about past actions that happened many times.

*Teachers used to hit children.*

We can always use the past simple instead of used to.

*Boys and girls used to go/went to different schools.*

However, we cannot use used to for past actions that happened once.

*The government banned corporal punishment. (not used-to-be)*

> See Language Reference Page 24

2 Look at the sentences below. Replace the past simple with used to where possible.

1 The writer, Frank McCourt, was a teacher.
2 He wrote a book called *Angela’s Ashes*.
3 He was born in New York.
4 His family moved to Ireland.
5 His family didn’t have much money.
6 His father told funny stories to Frank.
7 Frank loved listening to his father.
8 Frank won the Pulitzer Prize for this book about his childhood.

3 Write six sentences about yourself when you were at primary school. Begin three sentences with I used to ... and three with I didn’t use to ... .

**PRONUNCIATION: irregular past simple verbs**

1 Underline the word in the groups 1–4 below which has a different sound from the other words in the group.

1 bought caught found thought
2 came gave made said
3 broke drove lost spoke
4 felt knew met went

2 ♫ 1.22 Listen to the recording to check your answers.

**SPEAKING**

1 Think about schools in your country now and in the past. How are they different? Make notes, using your own ideas and the ideas in the box to help you.

- computers/technology
- class sizes
- types of school
- the school buildings
- when you can leave school
- school subjects
- exams
- behaviour
- punishment

2 Work in pairs and compare your ideas. Are schools now better or worse than they used to be?

*Schools in my country used to be very different. For example, ...*
Red faces

Speaking & Reading

1 Work in pairs. Look at the pictures A–C and describe what is happening in each one. Which of these situations do you think is the most embarrassing?

2 Read the messages from an internet discussion group for teachers and match them to the pictures.

A

It's the head!

B

History exam silence

C

New teachers' welcome party

Doug 20 April
In October last year, I was working at a school in Cambridge and it was only my second month in the job. At the end of the month the head teacher organized a party for all the new teachers. It was a good chance to get to know my new colleagues and I was really looking forward to it. As the party was on 31st October, I thought it was a Hallowe’en party. So, the day before the party, I went to a costume hire shop and got a witch’s costume. When I arrived at the head’s house, he opened the door and looked at me as if I was completely mad. All the other teachers were wearing normal clothes! Doug

Tamsin 26 April
It was the end of term in June and the students were doing their exams. I was in charge that day and, as usual before the start of the exam, I told the students all the rules: no talking, no mobile phones and so on. I was walking up and down between the rows of desks when suddenly my own phone rang. That was bad enough, but the phone had a really silly ring tone. It took me ages to find the phone in my bag and my face went bright red. One of the students was laughing so much that she fell out of her chair. Tamsin

Kelly 3 May
Worst moment? It was one day last May. When I woke up in the morning, I wasn’t feeling very well. But it was a beautiful day and I decided to go to school. In the first class I gave the students an exercise to do and sat down at my desk. It was hot and the sun was coming through the window and I fell asleep. I probably slept for only two or three minutes. Then I heard a noise and I woke up. All the children were laughing and the headmaster was standing at the door of the class! Fortunately, he was very sympathetic later in the morning when I explained that I was feeling ill. Kelly
3 Read the messages again and answer the questions.

1 Why did Doug’s head teacher organize a party?
2 Why was Doug looking forward to the party?
3 Why did he wear witch’s clothes?
4 Why was Tamsin in an examination room?
5 What was special about Tamsin’s phone?
6 Why didn’t she turn off her phone immediately?
7 Why did Kelly decide to go to work when she wasn’t well?
8 Why did Kelly wake up?

4 Work in pairs. Describe an embarrassing experience that happened to you or someone you know.

GRAMMAR: past continuous

We use the past continuous to describe actions in progress at a particular time in the past.

Where were you working in October last year?
I was working at a school in Cambridge.
Was she feeling ill? Yes, she was. / No, she wasn’t.

We use the past simple for actions that interrupt the actions in the past continuous.
I was walking up and down when my phone rang.

See Language Reference page 24

1 Complete the text. Put the verbs in brackets into the past simple or the past continuous.

A few days ago, I (1) wait (wait) for the bus with my younger brother. We (2) go (go) home after an afternoon at the shops. A very large woman with a big shopping bag (3) stand (stand) in front of us. After a few minutes, the bus (4) arrive (arrive). The woman (5) get (get) on the bus when she (6) turn (turn) round. ‘Can you help me with my bag?’ she (7) ask (ask) us. ‘Yes, of course,’ (8) say (say) my brother. ‘Are you going to have a baby?’

2 Look at the pictures A–C on page 20 for one minute. Then work in pairs. Turn to page 127 and answer the questions.

3 Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about what you were doing at the times below.

* fifteen minutes ago
* one hour ago
* at six o’clock this morning

What were you doing fifteen minutes ago?
I was having a cup of coffee.

1 Work in groups. First, read these sentences and decide which list they belong to.

1 Speak in front of their friends about funny things that they did when they were younger.
2 Don’t say hello to their friends when they visit your home.
3 When their friends are visiting, speak with your mouth full of food.
4 Tell them (in front of their friends) to wear clothes that they do not like.

How to embarrass your parents

How to embarrass your children

2 Now discuss how parents can embarrass their children and how children can embarrass their parents. Add three more sentences to each list.

3 Present your lists to the rest of the class.
2D | Which school?

Speaking

1 Work in pairs. You and your partner win first prize in a competition. Read the information and decide which city you both want to study in.

First Prize
English Study Tour for Two

Two weeks all inclusive (flight, accommodation, school fees)

England: London • Scotland: Edinburgh
Republic of Ireland: Dublin • America: New York
Australia: Sydney • New Zealand: Christchurch
South Africa: Cape Town

Vocabulary: school facilities

1 Look at the advertisement for an English school. Match the words in bold to the definitions below.

1 = library

1 a place to borrow or read books
2 a restaurant/café in a place of work
3 money you pay for a professional service
4 place or position
5 teaching
6 that you can change
7 they have done this job a lot
8 they have professional exams/qualifications

2 List three important things for you in choosing a language school.

3 Work in pairs and compare your lists.

Victoria School of English Sydney

The Victoria School has a central location near the Opera House. Our qualified and experienced teachers provide top quality tuition with flexible timetables. The school has an ultra-modern multi-media centre with 20 PCs, a language laboratory and a library. The school has its own cafeteria and an exciting social programme. Special fees for international students.
LISTENING

1. A man is asking for information about a course in a French language school. Listen to the conversation and underline the correct information.

CLASS SIZE: 10 / 15 / 20 students per class
LEVEL: Beginner / Intermediate / Advanced
TIMETABLE: Mon & Wed / Tues & Thurs / Tues & Fri 7:30 - 9:00 / 8:00 - 9:30 / 8:30 - 9:30
COURSE LENGTH: 10 / 12 / 15 weeks
FRENCH CLUB: Friday mornings / Friday evenings / Saturday evenings
PRICE: £100 / £120 / £150

2. Match the words in column A with the words from column B to make phrases.

A | B
---|---
1. day-time | a. activities
2. native | b. class
3. registration | c. courses
4. social | d. form
5. ten-week | e. speakers

3. Listen to the conversation again to check your answers.

FUNCTIONAL LANGUAGE: asking for information

1. Rearrange the words to make questions.

1. Please could I have some information about your school?
2. about could information have school I please some your?
3. a are class how in many students?
4. beginners classes do for have you?
5. are classes the time what?
6. course does how long the?
7. activities any are social there?
8. fees course the much are how?

Look at transcript 1.23 on page 134 to check your answers.

SPEAKING

Roleplay

1. Work in pairs. You are going to plan an evening school. Use these questions to help you.
   - Where is your school?
   - What is it called?
   - What kinds of courses does the school offer?
   - Who are the teachers?
   - What facilities does the school have?
   - How much do the courses cost?
   - What is special about your school?

2. Find another pair and work in groups of four. Find out about each other's schools.

DID YOU KNOW?

1. Work in pairs. Read the facts about the English language and discuss the questions.

- About 375,000,000 people speak English as a first language.
- About 375,000,000 people speak English as a second language.
- About 1,000,000,000 people study English around the world.
- About 500,000 people take examinations (British or American) in English as a foreign language every year.
- About 1,000,000 people go to Britain or America to study English every year.

- When and where do people use English in your country?
- Do many people in your country study English? Why do they study?
- What English language examinations do people take in your country?
- Do you know anyone who has studied English in an English-speaking country? Did they like it?
GRAMMAR

Past simple
We use the past simple to talk about past actions and states. The actions and states are finished.

I left school in 1999. Then I went to University.
I liked rock music when I was a teenager.

We often use a time expression with the past simple, for example, yesterday, last week, in 2003.

I saw John yesterday.
We lived in Brussels in 2003.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Affirmative &amp; Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I found a job.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He/She/It didn’t find a job.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You/We/They</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>When did you find a job?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I found a job.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Short answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Did you find a job?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes, I did. / No, I didn’t.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

With regular verbs, we usually add -ed to the infinitive in the affirmative. There are three groups of exceptions.

1. When the verb ends in -e, we add -d.
   like → liked
   love → loved

2. When the verb ends in -y after a consonant, we change the -y to -ied.
   study → studied
   try → tried

3. With some verbs that end in a consonant, we double the consonant.
   plan → planned
   stop → stopped

Other verbs in this group include: admit, chat, control, drop, nod, occur, refer, regret, rob, transfer and trap.

Many common verbs have irregular past forms.
   eat → ate
   go → went
   leave → left

Used to
We use used to to talk about past states and past actions that happened many times.

My family used to live in Rome.
We used to go out for a meal every Saturday.

We can always use the past simple instead of used to, but we cannot use used to for actions that happened only once.

We used to live in Rome. = We lived in Rome.
My family moved back to London in 1995.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Affirmative &amp; Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I used to like school.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He/She/It didn’t use to like school.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You/We/They</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Did you use to like school?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes, I did. / No, I didn’t.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Past continuous
We use the past continuous to describe actions in progress at a particular time in the past. We often use the past continuous to describe the background situation of a story.

It was the end of term and the students were doing their exams.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Affirmative &amp; Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was talking on the phone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He/She/It wasn’t talking on the phone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You/We/They were weren’t</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>When were you talking?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes, I was. / No, I wasn’t.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Were they working?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes, they were. / No, they weren’t.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We make the past continuous with was/were + infinitive + -ing. If the infinitive ends in a consonant + -e:

live → living

With some verbs that end in a consonant, we double the consonant. See the list of verbs in group 3 in the past simple above.
### Functional Language

**Asking for Information**

*(Please) could I have some information about ... ?
Could you tell me about ..., (please)?
How much is/are ... ?
What time is/are ... ?
How long does/do the ... last?
Do you have ... ?
Is there a ... ?
Are there any ... ?
How many ... are there?

### Word List

#### Adjectives with prepositions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Preposition</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>afraid</td>
<td>of</td>
<td>afraid of ***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bored</td>
<td>with</td>
<td>bored with ***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fond</td>
<td>of</td>
<td>fond of ***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good</td>
<td>at</td>
<td>good at ***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interested</td>
<td>in</td>
<td>interested in ***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keen</td>
<td>on</td>
<td>keen on ***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terrible</td>
<td>at</td>
<td>terrible at ***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>worried</td>
<td>about</td>
<td>worried about ***</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Education

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cafeteria</td>
<td>n C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>certificate</td>
<td>n C ***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compulsory</td>
<td>adj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>computer</td>
<td>n C ***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>course</td>
<td>n C ***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>desk</td>
<td>n C ***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>education system</td>
<td>n C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>examination</td>
<td>exam (n)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>experienced</td>
<td>adj *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fail</td>
<td>(an exam) v ***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fee</td>
<td>n C **</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get a place</td>
<td>at university</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>grade</td>
<td>n C *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>headmaster</td>
<td>n C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>headmistress</td>
<td>n C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>headteacher</td>
<td>n C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>homework</td>
<td>n U *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>language</td>
<td>n C ***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laboratory</td>
<td>n C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leaving age</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Other words & phrases

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>leaving certificate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lesson</td>
<td>n C ***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>location</td>
<td>n C **</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mixed sex</td>
<td>adj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multi-media centre</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>native speaker</td>
<td>n C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass</td>
<td>(an exam) v ***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>private school</td>
<td>n C (corporal)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>punishment</td>
<td>n U *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pupil</td>
<td>n C ***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qualification</td>
<td>n C *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>registration form</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>result</td>
<td>n C ***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>single sex</td>
<td>adj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>social programme/</td>
<td>activity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>state school</td>
<td>n C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subject</td>
<td>n C ***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>term</td>
<td>n C ***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timetable</td>
<td>n C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tuition</td>
<td>n U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>university</td>
<td>n C ***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>School subjects</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>art</td>
<td>n U ***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>biology</td>
<td>n U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greek</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>history</td>
<td>n U ***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irish</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Latin</td>
<td>n U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mathematics</td>
<td>(maths)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>music</td>
<td>n U ***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>religion</td>
<td>n U ***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>science</td>
<td>n U ***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>technology</td>
<td>n U ***</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Other words & phrases

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>club</td>
<td>n C ***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>choose</td>
<td>v ***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(multinational)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>company</td>
<td>n C ***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>competition</td>
<td>n C ***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>complicated</td>
<td>adj **</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>embarrass</td>
<td>v</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enjoy</td>
<td>v ***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exciting</td>
<td>adj **</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fancy dress costume</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>party</td>
<td>n C ***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flexible</td>
<td>adj *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flight</td>
<td>n C ***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fun</td>
<td>adj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>funny</td>
<td>adj ***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>government</td>
<td>n C ***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>great</td>
<td>adj ***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in addition</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in charge</td>
<td>of (of)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(all) inclusive</td>
<td>adj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minimum</td>
<td>adj/n **</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miss</td>
<td>(a lesson) v ***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mobile phone</td>
<td>n C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of course</td>
<td>adv ***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>organize</td>
<td>v</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>painter</td>
<td>n C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>provide</td>
<td>v ***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>row</td>
<td>n C ***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rule</td>
<td>n C ***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shopping bag</td>
<td>n C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stupid</td>
<td>adj **</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sympathetic</td>
<td>adj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ultra-modern</td>
<td>adj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>witch</td>
<td>n C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>worry</td>
<td>(about sb/sth) v ***</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Language Reference

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>accent</td>
<td>n C *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>actually</td>
<td>adv ***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anyway</td>
<td>adv ***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>artist</td>
<td>n C **</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as usual</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(fall)</td>
<td>asleep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ban</td>
<td>v *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>behaviour</td>
<td>n U ***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>borrow</td>
<td>v **</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brilliant</td>
<td>adj *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>care</td>
<td>(about sb) v ***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/æksənt/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/æktjuəli/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ənəˈvɛr/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ɛktˈstɪst/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/əz /ˈdʒʌzəl/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ˈslɪp/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/bæn/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ˈbɜrəʊ/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ˈbrɪljənt/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ˈkɛə/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3A Flatmates

Vocabulary: house & home

1. Do you live in a house or a flat? What do you like most about your home? Discuss and compare your answers in pairs.

2. Complete the sentences with house or home.
   1. What is your home town like?
   2. At what age do people usually leave ______ in your country?
   3. How do you feel when you are away from ______?
   4. Is your mother a ______ wife or does she have another job?
   5. How much ______ work does your teacher usually give you?
   6. What time do you usually get ______ in the evenings?
   7. Who does most of the cleaning and the other ______ work where you live?


Pronunciation: /h/

1. Find two words in the box that do not begin with the sound /h/.
   - happy
   - holiday
   - honest
   - hotel
   - who
   - hospital
   - home
   - house
   - what
   - whole

2. Listen to the recording to check your answers.

3. How well can you say the sentence below?
   In Hertford, Hereford and Hampshire hurricanes hardly ever happen.
   (from the film My Fair Lady)

4. Listen and repeat.

Listening

1. You are going to listen to two friends talking about their home life. Ali lives with his parents and two brothers. He wants to go to live with Charlie, who shares a flat with four friends.

   Look at the statements below. Who do you think is speaking: Ali (A) or Charlie (C)?

   1. There’s nothing to eat.
   2. I get no peace and I can’t do any work.
   3. There’s no space in the house.
   4. We don’t go to bed early.
   5. I can’t have any friends in the house.
   6. The kitchen is a bit dirty.

2. Listen to the conversation to check your answers.

3. Listen to the conversation again. Choose the best definition for the phrases below.

   1. Grim!
      a) That’s bad!
      b) That’s good!
   2. It’s driving me mad.
      a) It makes me angry
      b) It makes me sad.
   3. I don’t want to put you off.
      a) I don’t want to encourage you.
      b) I don’t want to discourage you.

4. Work in pairs. Discuss these questions.
   • What do you think Ali should do?
   • What are the advantages and disadvantages of living at home when you are a student?
   • Do most students live at home in your country?
Grammar: countable & uncountable nouns with some, any & no

Countable nouns
We can count countable nouns (for example, one problem, two problems). They have both a singular and plural form.

There’s a new problem.
He’s got problems at home.

Uncountable nouns
We cannot count uncountable nouns. (We cannot say two homeworks.) They only have a singular form.

I have to do my homework.

Some, any & no
We can use some, any and no with both countable and uncountable nouns.

Some
We usually use some in positive sentences.

We’ve got some cousins. (countable)
I’m going to get some food. (uncountable)

Any
We usually use any in negative sentences and questions.

I can’t have any friends. (countable)
I can’t do any work. (uncountable)
Have you got any better ideas? (countable)
Do you have any time at the weekend? (uncountable)

No
A positive verb + no has the same meaning as a negative verb + any.

There are no problems.
= There aren’t any problems. (countable)
I get no independence.
= I don’t get any independence. (uncountable)

2 Choose the correct words to complete the dialogue.

Mum: What’s the (1) problem / problems, Ali? You look really unhappy at the moment.
Ali: There’s (2) any / no problem, Mum.
Mum: Yes, there is. What’s the matter? (3) Is / Are your teachers at college giving you a lot of (4) homework / homeworks?
Ali: No, it’s not that. But you know I’ve got (5) any / some very important exams in two weeks …
Mum: Yes?
Ali: Well, I can’t find the (6) time / times to study. I don’t get (7) any / no peace in my room with the others there. It’s really hard to work.
Mum: I’m sorry. I know what you mean. There really isn’t (8) any / some space in the house when we have guests, is there?
Ali: Mum – I’m thinking of moving in with (9) any / some friends.
Mum: Oh, you can’t do that! I know, I’ve got (10) an / some idea. Why don’t you do your (11) work / works with me in the living room?

3 Work in pairs, A and B.

A: Turn to page 127. Look at the picture of Charlie’s bedroom.
B: Turn to page 129. Look at the picture of Charlie’s bedroom after a party.

How many differences can you find?

Are there any people in your picture?
There are some bottles on the table.
There’s no food in this picture.

Speaking

Roleplay

1 Work in groups of three to five. You share a flat with the other students in your group. There are some problems and no one is really happy.

Read your role card and decide what you want to say to your flatmates. At the end of the discussion, make a list of four rules for the flat so that everyone is happy.

No smoking in the flat.

A: Turn to page 126.
B: Turn to page 128.
C: Turn to page 129.
D: Turn to page 130.
E: Turn to page 131.

You are sitting in the living room with your flatmates. Student C begins the discussion.

There are some things I want to talk about …
**Another country**

**Reading**

1. On a piece of paper, write everything that you know about Scotland. You have two minutes.
   
   Now work in pairs and compare your ideas.

2. Read the magazine article and choose the best summary.
   
   1. An American man becomes interested in where his family came from.
   2. An American man goes to a conference about Scotland.
   3. An American man returns to his family's home town in Scotland.

3. Read the article again and put the sentences a-f in the gaps 1-6.
   
   a. And they also told me about the communities of Scots living abroad.
   b. I already have my ticket.
   c. My grandmother worked for President Roosevelt.
   d. Scottish bankers, Scottish businessmen, in politics, in the arts, in education – everywhere you look there's a Scot.
   e. There are, for example, 75 places called Hamilton around the world.
   f. They went to Australia, Canada, America and New Zealand.

4. Find these words in the article and choose the best definition.
   
   1. conference (line 6)
      a. a large meeting where people talk about one subject
      b. a short conversation
   
   2. origin (line 15)
      a. a place where you go on holiday
      b. the place that you come from
   
   3. settled down (line 17)
      a. got married and stayed in a place
      b. sat down
   
   4. strange (line 24)
      a. normal or ordinary
      b. not normal
   
   5. reunion (line 29)
      a. wedding
      b. meeting people again after a long time

---

**Scots Abroad**  
*by Ted Hamilton*

I always knew that I had a Scottish name, but I always thought of myself as American. I never thought about my name. I was born, like my parents and grandparents before them, here in Lexington, Kentucky. My father was in the Marines and (1) __ Not many families are more American than us.

Then, two weeks ago, I went to a conference of whisky producers here in Lexington. I counted 245 names on the conference programme and many of them were Scottish. I also met two brothers called Hamilton and they never stopped talking. They told me about the Hamilton clan (the Scottish word for family) and about the Hamilton tartan. They told me about the first Lord Hamilton, who married the daughter of King James II of Scotland. (2) __ (The brothers came, would you believe it, from a place called Hamilton in Canada.)

Apparently, five million people live in Scotland, but there are more than 30 million people of Scottish origin around the world. Many Scots went to live abroad in the nineteenth century to find land and jobs. (3) __ They settled down, had families and some of them gave their names to their home towns. (4) __

Here, in the state of Kentucky, it seems that most of the people you meet have some Scottish origins. We came here poor, but we are everywhere now. (5) __ How many of them are like me, I asked the Hamilton brothers. How many know almost nothing about their origins? To my surprise, I learnt that I was probably the only one. The Hamilton brothers thought I was very strange.

But after the conference I was a changed man. Now, most days, I go to the Hamilton Family website and chat with James and David, the brothers from Ontario (and a hundred others). Yesterday, I got my first copy of a magazine called *Scots Abroad*. I am also waiting for the tartan scarf that I ordered online. And next summer, there is a reunion of Hamiltons in Edinburgh Castle. (6) __
SPEAKING

1 Work in pairs. Discuss these questions.
- Did many people leave your country in the past? Why did they leave? Where did they go?
- Do many people from your country live abroad?
- Do you know anybody who lives abroad? If so, why did they go?
- What do people from your country miss when they are abroad?

GRAMMAR: some, many & most

We can use some, many and most with or without of.

- Some of them gave their names to their home towns.
- Most of the people you meet have some Scottish origins.
- Many Scots went to foreign countries.
- Most days, I log on to the website.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>not many</th>
<th>not many</th>
<th>the, my, his, etc + plural noun (people)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>some</td>
<td>some</td>
<td>of them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>most</td>
<td>most</td>
<td>us</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Make true sentences using the phrases in the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Not many</th>
<th>Some</th>
<th>Many</th>
<th>Most</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>people in this country</td>
<td>people in this town</td>
<td>students</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the students in this class</td>
<td>my friends</td>
<td>of our English lessons</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

are difficult to understand. are married. are very interesting. arrive late. don't have much money. drive a nice car. have a job. like their work. live near here. need English at work. speak two or three languages.

3 Work in pairs and compare your answers.

DID YOU KNOW?

1 Work in pairs. How much do you know about the United Kingdom?
- Write the capital cities on the correct places on the map.
- What do you know about the different countries in the United Kingdom?

Great Britain is the island of England, Scotland and Wales. The United Kingdom is Great Britain and Northern Ireland. The flag of the United Kingdom is called the Union Flag.

Capital Cities of the UK
- Cardiff
- London
- Belfast
- Edinburgh
Vocabulary: towns

1 Look at the words in the box.

- art gallery
- bar
- bus
- cinema
- crime
- flat
- house
- library
- metro
- nightclub
- park
- pollution
- restaurant
- studio
- theatre
- traffic
- tram

Put the words into these groups.

- public transport
- types of accommodation
- nightlife, culture
- other

Can you add any other words to the groups?

2 Imagine that you are going to live somewhere new. Which things are most important for you?

Reading

1 Imagine that you are going to live in Montreal. Read the webpage. Choose which area (Verdun, Outremont or Old Montreal) you would prefer to live in. Why?

Work in pairs and compare your answers.

2 Read the webpage again. Which part of Montreal do the sentences refer to: Verdun (V), Outremont (O) or Old Montreal (OM)?

1 = OM
1 There are a lot of cars.
2 It doesn’t cost a lot to live here.
3 It has the best places to eat.
4 It isn’t dangerous.
5 It’s a good place for outdoor sport.
6 There isn’t much to do in the evening.
7 There are a lot of cultural activities.
8 There isn’t much cheap accommodation.

Verdun

We live down by the river. It’s a poor area and there’s a lot of crime, but the shops are good and there are a few good restaurants. The shopping area is not very attractive, but it is changing. Public transport is excellent and we’re near the city centre. In the summer, Verdun is the place to be. The river here is really beautiful and you can have picnics in the park. There isn’t enough nightlife for us, so we go to the area near the university for that.

Accommodation is cheap!

BRIGITTE GOFFIN & BERNARD YIP (students)

Want to know more? Click here

Outremont

Outremont has many advantages. The best restaurants in town, the most beautiful park and the biggest houses. You feel safe here. You meet interesting, important people and it’s good for business. There are not many Japanese restaurants and we do very well. When we’re not working, we like having a coffee outside one of the cafés. We don’t have much time to enjoy the area, but we like going up to the park at Mount Royal sometimes. The only problem, really, is that you need to speak French in this part of town (and we don’t!).

KINAMOTO (restaurant owner)

Want to know more? Click here
GRAMMAR: quantifiers

1. Look again at the text about Montreal. Find the expressions in the table below and complete the examples with nouns from the text.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>quantifiers with plural countable nouns</th>
<th>quantifiers with uncountable nouns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>too many _______ tourists</td>
<td>too much _______ traffic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a lot of _______</td>
<td>a lot of _______</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>many _______</td>
<td>not much _______</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not many _______</td>
<td>a little _______</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a few _______</td>
<td>not enough _______</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Language Reference page 34

2. Here is some more information about these places. Choose the correct expression to complete the sentences.

Verdun
1. There are a lot of/much cheap flats.
2. There are not many/not much hotels for tourists.
3. There is a little/a few big factories.

Outremont
4. There’s not many/not much crime.
5. There are a lot of/too much French speakers.
6. There is not many/not much unemployment.

Old Montreal
7. There are too many/too much cars.
8. There are many/too much things to do for children.

3. Write six sentences about your town. Use a different quantifier in each sentence.

SPEAKING

1. Turn to page 127 and complete column A.
2. Work in pairs. Ask questions about your partner’s town. Write the answers in column B on page 127.

Useful language

What is the name of your town?
How much ... is there?
How many ... are there?

3. Compare your answers.

If you described the same town as your partner, did you have the same answers?
If you described a different town, which town is the better place to live?
**Speaking**

1. Read the information about the city of Newcastle.

2. Work in small groups.

   Are there any towns or cities in your country that are similar to Newcastle? In what ways?

   *Bilbao is near the sea. It also has a famous football team.*

---

**Vocabulary: Places in a town**

1. Label the map below with the words in the box.

   - bridge
   - art gallery
   - castle
   - bars and restaurants
   - bus station
   - cathedral
   - church
   - library
   - opera house
   - shopping centre
   - stadium
   - train station

2. Are the statements below true (T) or false (F)?

   1. The art gallery is opposite the library.
   2. The bars and restaurants are near the river.
   3. The cathedral is opposite the stadium.
   4. The opera house is next to the castle.
   5. The shopping centre is between the art gallery and the bus station.
   6. There is a metro station not far from the stadium.

3. Do you have these places in your town? Where are they?
LISTENING

1. 1.27 Listen to a conversation in Newcastle train station. Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.
   1. Mary is saying goodbye / hello to Emma and Lucy.
   2. The men want to go to the shopping centre / stadium.
   3. Emma finds it difficult / easy to give directions.
   4. Her aunt helps / doesn’t help.

2. 1.27 Listen again and follow Mary’s directions on the map. Which route did she describe: A, B or C?

FUNCTIONAL LANGUAGE: directions

1. 1.28-1.30 Stuart and Tony are in front of the castle. Listen to three more conversations. Which speaker gives the best directions to the stadium?

2. 1.31 Listen to extracts from conversations 1–3 again and complete the sentences.
   1. ____ straight on.
   2. ____ the first street on the right.
   3. ____ past the station.
   4. ____ the bridge.
   5. ____ to the end of the road.
   6. ____ the first street on the left.

3. Match the phrases in exercise 2 to the pictures.

   A  B  C  D  E  F

4. Work in pairs, A and B. You are at the train station in Newcastle.
   A: Choose a place you want to go to. Ask B for directions.
   B: Look at the map and give A directions.

Questions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Excuse me,</th>
<th>where's the …</th>
<th>can/could you tell me the way to …</th>
<th>please?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Prepositions

behind between near not far from in front of opposite next to on the corner of

PRONUNCIATION: to

1. 1.32 Listen to the pronunciation of the word to (/tə/) in the middle of these phrases.
   - interesting place to visit
   - difficult to give directions
   - next to the castle

2. Look at tapescript 1.27 on page 135. There are five examples of to in the middle of a phrase. Find them and underline them.

3. 1.33 Listen to the recording to check your answers.

4. Practise saying the phrases with the short pronunciation of to (/tə/).
GRAMMAR

Countable & uncountable nouns

Countable nouns
Most nouns in English are countable. We can count them. They have both a singular and plural form for example, one	house, two houses.

It’s a new house.

He’s got two houses in London.

A small group of countable nouns has irregular plurals
(child/children, man/men, woman/women, foot/feet, tooth/teeth, mouse/mice).

Uncountable nouns
Some nouns are uncountable. We cannot count them. For example, we cannot say two homeworks. They only have a

singular form.

I want to do my homework.

Some nouns can be both countable and uncountable. The uncountable noun refers to the thing in general; the
countable noun refers to a particular example of it.

Crime is a problem in many cities.

(uncountable: crime in general)

Sherlock Holmes solved hundreds of crimes.

(countable: particular crimes)

Determiners

Some & any
We use some and any to describe an indefinite quantity of something. We can use some and any with both countable
and uncountable nouns.

We usually use some in positive sentences.

I’ve got some biscuits. (countable)

He’s going to buy some milk. (uncountable)

We usually use any in negative sentences and questions.

Mark doesn’t like any vegetables. (countable)

I haven’t got any money. (uncountable)

Have you got any apples? (countable)

Do you have any advice for me? (uncountable)

No
We use no with both countable and uncountable nouns.
A positive verb + no has the same meaning as a negative
verb + any.

There are no biscuits. = There aren’t any biscuits.

(countable)

I have no time. = I don’t have any time.

(uncountable)

Quantifiers
We can use quantifiers before a noun to show how much of
something there is.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>quantifiers with plural</th>
<th>quantifiers with uncountable nouns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>too many</td>
<td>too much</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a lot of</td>
<td>a lot of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>many</td>
<td>not much</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not many</td>
<td>a little</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a few</td>
<td>not enough</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There are too many tourists in this town.

I know a few good restaurants near here.

We do not have much time.

We do not usually use much in affirmative sentences. We use a lot of instead.

There’s a lot of work to do. Not There’s much work.

Some, many & most
We can use some, many and most with or without of.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>of</th>
<th>my friends the students live at home</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Not many</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Some</td>
<td></td>
<td>Some of my friends are working.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Many</td>
<td></td>
<td>Most of the people I know are very interesting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Most</td>
<td></td>
<td>Many people spend their holidays abroad.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Most days, I do some homework.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Students
FUNCTIONAL LANGUAGE

Directions

Excuse me, can/could you tell me the way to ... please?

behind
between
in front of
near
next to
not far from
on the corner of
opposite

Cross the bridge road.
Go past the ...
Go straight on.
Go to the end of the road/street.
Take the first/second street on the left/right.

WORD LIST

House & home

(be) away from home
get home
home town
homework n U *
housewife n C
housework n U
leave home

Towns

accommodation n U **
art gallery n C
bar n C ****
bridge n C **
bus station n C
castle n C **
cathedral n C
church n C ***
cinema n C **
crime n C/U ***
culture n U ***
flat n C **
industrial adj ***
library n C
metro n C
museum n C ***
nightclub n C
nightlife n U
park n C **
operation house n C
pollution n U **
public transport n U
restaurant n C ***
shopping centre n C
stadium n C
studio n C **
theatre n C **
traffic n U ***
tram n C
train station n C ***

Other words & phrases

abroad adv **
area n C ***
banker n C
cash n U ***
century n C ***
chat v *
cheap adj ***
clan n C
coal n U *
community n C ***
conference n C **
countryside n U **
dirty adj ***
discourage v
drive (eb) mad v
encourage v ***
flatmate n C
flag n C
grim adj
guest n C **
girlfriend n C
immigrant n C
independence n U **
normal adj ***
online adj/adv
ordinary adj
origin n C **
outdoor adj
owner n C ***
passenger n C **
peace n U ***
picnic n C
producer n C *
programme n C ***
put (sb) off v
reunion n C
rollerblading n U
scarf n C
settle down v
skating n U
sofa n C
space n U ***
strange adj ***
tartan adj/n
tourist n C **
twine n C *
whisky n U

/sbrexta:n/
/‘hæm/m/
/get hounm/
/‘haunm taun/
/‘həumwesk/ /
/houswaf/ /
/houswesk/
/ˈlaɪv ˈhaʊm/
Online dating

**Speaking**

1. Work in pairs. Discuss these questions.

- Do you know anyone who uses the internet to make friends?
- Do you think that the internet is a good way to meet other people?
- What are the advantages and disadvantages of internet dating?

**Reading**

1. Look at the advertisement from an internet dating agency and answer the questions.

1. How old is Lynn?
2. Does she have any children?
3. What is her job?
4. What does she do in her free time?
5. What adjectives does she use to describe her personality?
6. What adjectives does she use to describe her perfect partner?
7. What does her perfect partner enjoy doing?

---

**Lynn**

**Age:** 28  
**Occupation:** primary school teacher

I am a single mother with two young girls. I also work with young children and at the end of the day I'm often too tired for much. I put the kids to bed and then I usually read or watch TV for an hour or two before I go to bed.

At the weekends and in the holidays, it's a different story. I'm a very active and outgoing person. We always do something or go somewhere - the beach, picnics in the country, visiting friends and family and we go to the cinema every Sunday. There's not much that I don't like! My friends often say that I have a very full life. Why do you want a new partner, they ask. I don't want a father for my kids (they already have one!) but I don't want to be on my own for the rest of my life. First of all, I want new friends. Love comes later.

My perfect partner is happy with his life and believes in himself. He is open in his relationships, warm and friendly. He always says how he feels and he never has any secrets. He wants a partner, but he doesn't need one. I already have kids - I don't want to be his mother, too!

He has a good job and does not have any money worries. He works hard, but he also likes the good things in life - good food, going out, giving and receiving. He is independent and sometimes prefers to do things on his own or with other friends. He likes travelling and meeting other people. He doesn't smoke or drink.
2 Work in groups of three, A–C. You are going to read internet advertisements for three different men. Read the advertisement and tick (✓) the sentences that are about your man.

A: Turn to page 128.
B: Turn to page 130.
C: Turn to page 132.

1 He does not have a job.
2 He does not like cities.
3 He enjoys going to restaurants.
4 He has a daughter.
5 He is a very active person.
6 He is not very rich.
7 He is often not at home.
8 He is quiet and friendly.
9 He likes being on his own.
10 He likes being with other people.
11 He loves music.
12 He wants a romantic partner.
13 He wants an intelligent partner.
14 He wants to have a family.
15 His perfect partner doesn’t work too much.

3 Who is the best partner for Lynn? Read the information about your man again. Underline all his good and bad points.

In your group, compare the information about the different men and decide who is the best partner.

GRAMMAR: present simple

We use the present simple to talk about habits and things that are generally/always true.

I usually watch TV before I go to bed.
I already have kids.

Remember to add -s to the third person singular.

He works hard and he likes the good things in life.

Frequency adverbs and phrases
We usually put words like often, sometimes, never before the main verb, or after the verb to be.

He never has any secrets.
I’m often too tired to do much.

We can put phrases like every day, once a week at the beginning or end of the sentence.

We go to the cinema every Sunday.

1 Before choosing a partner, Lynn asked the men some questions. Rearrange the words to make her questions.

1 do do friends with what you your?
2 being like do other people with you?
3 cities do friends have in other you?
4 away do from how much home spend time you?
5 daytime do in the do what you?

2 Look at the men’s answers to Lynn’s questions.

Change / to he and make any other necessary changes.

1 I often invite friends for dinner or I go to their houses.
2 I like my friends but I don’t enjoy big groups of people.
3 Every year, I spend about two months away for work, so I don’t travel in the holidays.
4 I get up late and then I sometimes see a friend for lunch.

3 Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions in exercise 1.

4 Make the sentences true for you using words and phrases from the boxes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>always</th>
<th>usually</th>
<th>often</th>
<th>sometimes</th>
<th>never</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>once</td>
<td>twice</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>day</td>
<td>week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>every</td>
<td>three</td>
<td>times</td>
<td>month</td>
<td>year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 I get up late in the morning.
2 I go for a walk in the afternoon.
3 I am tired in the evenings.
4 I have dinner in a restaurant.
5 I read before I go to bed.
6 I visit friends at the weekend.

5 Make questions from the sentences in exercise 4.

Begin: How often do you ... ?

Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions.

PRONUNCIATION: final -s

1 1.34 Listen to the pronunciation of the final -s in these words. There are two ways of pronouncing the letter -s at the end of singular verbs and plural nouns.

/z/ goes lives days friends
/s/ likes wants books streets

2 1.34 Listen and repeat.

3 How do you pronounce the final -s in these words?

knows learns maps spends talks writes facts parties problems questions states things

4 1.35 Listen to the recording to check.
**VOCABULARY & SPEAKING: weddings**

1. Find these things in the pictures.
   - bouquet, bride, church, groom, priest, ring, wedding cake

2. Complete the description of English weddings with words from the box.
   - ceremony, guests, honeymoon, reception, registry office, speech

The (1) ____ usually takes place in a church or (2) ____. After the ceremony, the couple and their (3) ____ go to the (4) ____, where they drink champagne and eat the wedding cake. Later on, at the wedding meal, the best friend of the groom makes a (5) ____. The married couple often leave the party early to go on their (6) ____.

3. **1.36** Listen to the recording to check your answers.

4. Describe a wedding that you have been to. Use these questions to prepare what you are going to say.
   - Who got married?
   - Where and when were the ceremony and the reception?
   - What did the bride and groom wear?
   - Who did you go with?
   - How many guests were there? Who were they?
   - Was there any music at the wedding?
   - What did you eat and drink?
   - Did anyone make a speech? What did they say?
   - Did anything interesting or unusual happen?

**READING**

1. *Marriage is a thing of the past. Do you agree? Work in pairs. Explain why or why not.*

2. Read the magazine article and find out if the writer agrees that marriage is a thing of the past.

**COMMENT**

**Sue Carey disagrees with her university professor**

(1) ____ More and more people are living together and having children without getting married, she told us. The number of divorces is increasing all the time. It doesn’t matter if you are single or married, she said with a smile of victory. ‘The prison of marriage belongs to an older generation!’

(2) ____ But now, twenty years later – is marriage dead? You do not need to think about it for long: go to any newsagent and look at the magazines on sale. On the cover of every popular magazine like *Hello!* someone is getting married. Or maybe someone is getting divorced. The stories sell the magazines and in thousands of offices around the world, people are sitting around and looking at the wedding photos of the rich and famous.

(3) ____ In the UK, people are waiting until they are older to get married, but the number of weddings is actually increasing. True, divorces are also going up, but people are getting married again, for a second, third or fourth time.

(4) ____ In the year after university, I went to the weddings of four of my friends. My own (first) marriage was two years later. We want to read about marriage, look at films and photos, and do it ourselves. It appears that we can’t get enough of it. Sorry professor, but the conclusion seems clear: marriage is very much alive and well.
3 Read the article again and put the sentences a–d in the gaps 1–4.

a Marriage is certainly changing.
b Marriage, said one of my professors at university, belongs to the past.
c She sounded sure of herself and we all agreed — or, at least, nobody disagreed.
d The simple fact is that most of us believe that marriage is good for us.

4 Work in pairs. Discuss these questions.

• Is marriage changing in your country? How?
• At what age do people usually get married?
• What are the advantages and disadvantages of getting married?

GRAMMAR: present continuous

We use the present continuous to talk about things that are happening now or around now.

What are you doing? I'm preparing my speech.
More and more people are getting married.
Why is the number of weddings increasing?

We cannot normally use some verbs (stative verbs) in the continuous form.
agree belong cost know like love
matter mean need seem understand want

See Language Reference page 44

5 More and more women in England keep / are keeping their own name when they get married.
6 Do you ever talk / Are you ever talking to your husband?
7 My girlfriend doesn't love / isn't loving me.
8 It doesn't matter / is not mattering if you're married or not.

3 Look at the picture of a wedding reception on page 130. Prepare five questions with the present continuous about the picture.

How many people are dancing?
What is the man with the white jacket doing?

4 Work in pairs. Close your books and ask your partner the questions you have prepared.

DID YOU KNOW?

1 Work in groups. Read about some wedding traditions in Britain and America and discuss these questions.

• Are they the same in your country?
• What wedding traditions do you have in your country?

The groom arrives at the wedding before his bride.
The bride wears a long white dress and a group of young girls (bridesmaids) follow her into the church.
The bride throws a bouquet of flowers in the air and other single women try to catch it. The woman who catches it will be the next to get married.
The bride and groom cut the wedding cake together.
After a wedding, the groom carries the bride into their new home.
A woman wears her wedding ring on the third finger of the left hand.

1 Complete the sentences. Put the verbs in brackets into the present continuous.

1 Hi. Yes. I'm on the train. We _____ (come) into Central Station.
2 Excuse me! I _____ (try) to work!
3 I _____ (tell) you the truth. I promise.
4 Let's stay here. It _____ (rain) outside.
5 And three players _____ (speak) to the referee who _____ (hold) up a red card.

Imagine a situation for each sentence. Who is speaking? Where are they?

2 Choose the correct verb form to complete the sentences.

1 The average UK wedding usually costs / is costing about £13,000.
2 We can see the Princess now - she wears / 's wearing a beautiful white dress.
3 Every time I get / am getting divorced, I keep the house.
4 Look! She doesn't wear / isn't wearing her wedding ring.
4c | At the movies

Speaking
1. Look at the photos from three films. What do you think is happening in each photo?
2. Work in pairs. Choose one of the pictures and prepare a short dialogue (three or four lines long) to go with it.
3. Perform your dialogue in front of the class. The other students must decide which photo you have chosen.

Listening
1. 1.37 Listen to a woman talking about the film in the poster below. What kind of film is it?
2. 1.37 Listen to the recording again. Put the events in the correct order.
   - Joe and Kathleen have an argument about business.
   - Joe and Kathleen kiss.
   - Joe finds out that Kathleen is his internet friend.
   - Joe opens a huge bookstore near Kathleen’s shop.
   - Joe visits Kathleen.
   - Kathleen meets a man in an internet chatroom.
   - Kathleen’s bookshop closes.
   - Kathleen splits up with her boyfriend.

   Look at tapescript 1.37 on page 136 to check your answers.

3. Explain the connection between the words in the box and the story of Joe and Kathleen.
   - café cold children flowers
   - journalist park

   Kathleen’s going out with a journalist.

4. If you have seen this film, did you like it? If you have not seen this film, would you like to see it? Why or why not?
VOCABULARY: relationship verbs

1 Complete the phrases in columns A and B with a word from the box.

| about (x2) | in (x3) | on | out (x2) | to | up |

A
1 He asked her ____ and
2 He was crazy ____ her and
3 They had a big argument ____ something and
4 They had a lot ____ common and
5 They went ____ together for a long time but

B
a she didn’t want to get married ____ him.
b she was ____ love with him, too.
c then they split ____.
d they went ____ a date to the cinema.
e they fell ____ love very quickly.

2 Now complete the sentences in column A with a phrase from column B. Sometimes there is more than one possible answer.

3 Work in pairs. Use the expressions in exercise 1 to talk about people you know.

   My brother, Lewis, asked my best friend, Stephanie, out.

FUNCTIONAL LANGUAGE: telling stories

When we tell a story informally (for example, personal stories, or the story of a film), we often use the present simple.

She doesn’t know his real name, but they seem to have a lot in common and they get on really well.

1 Work in groups of four: pair A and pair B.

Pair A: Turn to page 126.
Pair B: Turn to page 131.
Read the story of the film twice and then close your books.

2 Now practise telling your story together.

3 Swap partners and work with a student who read about a different film. Tell each other your stories.

Pronunciation: /ɪ/ & /iː/

1 Listen to the recording and repeat the words in the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>/ɪ/</th>
<th>/iː/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>live</td>
<td>leave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>think</td>
<td>teeth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>still</td>
<td>street</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rich</td>
<td>feel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hit</td>
<td>meet</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Underline the sounds /ɪ/ and /iː/ in the film titles below.

   Beauty and the Beast   The Big Sleep   Mission Impossible   Pretty Woman
   E.T.   Robin Hood: Prince of Thieves   The Prince of Egypt

3 Listen to the recording to check your answers.
Going out

**Speaking**

1. Work in pairs. Discuss these questions.
   - Which famous person would you like to have a date with? Why?
   - Where would you like to go?
   - What would you like to do on the date?

**Listening**

1. **1.40-1.41** Listen to two conversations. Who is speaking to who? What are they talking about?

   - Ruby
   - Davina
   - Patrick
   - Stuart

2. **1.40-1.41** Listen to the conversations again and complete the sentences with Davina (D), Patrick (P), Stuart (S) or Ruby (R).

   1. **D** had dinner with Patrick at a restaurant.
   2. **D** is having a dinner party on Saturday.
   3. **P** has a business dinner with an important client.
   4. **S** knows a nice restaurant near the river.
   5. **S** is busy in the morning.
   6. **P** wants to go to the pub.
   7. **P** would like to go out for a meal.
   8. **S** doesn’t want to get a taxi.
   9. **S** needs to get home early.

**Functional Language: invitations & suggestions**

1. In Listening exercise 1, which conversation was about:
   - someone inviting another person?
   - someone making suggestions?

2. Choose the correct verb form to complete the invitations and suggestions.

   **Invitations and suggestions**

   1. Would you like go / to go / going to the cinema?
   2. Shall we go / to go / going to the cinema?
   3. Why don’t we go / to go / going to the cinema?
   4. How about go / to go / going to the cinema?
   5. What about go / to go / going to the cinema?
   6. Let’s go / to go / going to the cinema.

   **Responses**

   - OK, that’s a good idea.
   - Yes, why not?
   - I’d rather ... (+ infinitive)
   - I’d rather not.
   - I’d love to, but I’m afraid I’m busy. That’s very kind of you, but ...

   Look at transcripts 1.40-1.41 on page 136 to check your answers.

3. Complete the sentences. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form.

   **Marilyn:** Hi, Wolfgang, would you like (1) **(go)** out somewhere on Monday?
   **Mozart:**
   **Marilyn:** What a pity! Why don’t we (2) **(do)** something on Tuesday, then?
   **Mozart:** All right. Let’s (3) **(do)** that. Where shall we (4) **(go)**?
   **Marilyn:** How about (5) **(go)** to a club?
   **Mozart:**
   **Marilyn:** Well, why don’t we (6) **(have)** a meal at the Hard Rock Café?
   **Mozart:**
   **Marilyn:** OK. That’s a good idea. Where shall we (7) **(meet)**?
4 Complete the dialogue in exercise 3 with the sentences a–c.

a I'd rather not. I'm not too keen on clubbing.
b I'd rather go for a pizza, if that's OK with you.
c That's very kind of you, Marilyn. I'd love to, but I'm afraid I'm busy on Monday.

5 Work in pairs. Practise the dialogue.

Roleplay

6 Imagine you are a famous person (alive or dead). Decide what you like doing when you go out for the evening.

Work in pairs. Try to make a date.

Grammar: Prepositions of time

- in + month (in January)
  year (in 2004)
  season (in the summer)
  the morning, the afternoon, the evening
- on + day(s) (on Monday, on Mondays)
  dates (on 7th June)
  Monday morning, Tuesday evening
- at + time (at 3 o'clock, at dinner time)
  night
  the weekend

1 Look at tapescripts 1.40–1.41 on page 136. Find more examples of prepositions of time: in, on and at.

2 Complete the sentences with in, on or at.

1 We met ___ Friday February 14th.
2 I went to a party ___ the evening and Michael was there.
3 We spoke for ages and ___ midnight, he finally asked for my phone number.
4 He called me ___ Saturday morning.
5 We had our first date ___ the evening.
6 I saw him again ___ Monday and Wednesday.
7 I met his parents ___ the weekend.
8 I asked him to marry me ___ Sunday evening.
9 Our wedding is ___ March – on the 14th!

3 Complete the sentences with in, on or at and a time expression.

In my country/town ...
1 the most popular time to get married is ...
2 people usually have dinner ...
3 most people go on holiday ...
4 the best time to go shopping is ...
5 the best programmes on TV are ...
6 the roads are really busy ...

4 Work in pairs. Compare your sentences.

Speaking

1 Work in groups. In the listening, Davina asks Patrick out on a date. What are the dating ‘rules’ for men and women in your country?

- Who usually asks who out – the man or the woman?
- Who usually pays for the date?
- Where do people go on a first date?
- How long do people date before they get married?
- Are the ‘rules’ for dating changing in your country? How?

Useful language

It varies (= it’s not always the same)
It depends (on …)
On the whole, … (= usually/generally)

2 What about you? Are you the same as most people in your country?
GRAMMAR

Present simple

We use the present simple to talk about habits and things that are generally/always true.

I buy a newspaper every day.
Mark comes from Australia.

We can also use the present simple to tell a story informally, for example, personal stories, or the story of a film.

She doesn’t know his real name, but they seem to have a lot in common and they get on really well.

Affirmative & Negative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>work</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>don’t work</td>
<td>in a bank.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>He/She/It</th>
<th>works</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>doesn’t work</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>You/We/They</th>
<th>work</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>don’t work</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Question

Where do I work?

Do I work in a bank?

Yes, I do./ No, I don’t.

Past continuous

We use the present continuous to talk about things that are happening now or around now.

What are you doing? I’m cooking a meal.
My husband’s working very hard at the moment.

Affirmative & Negative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>‘m not eating.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>He/She/It</th>
<th>‘s not eating.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>You/We/They</th>
<th>‘re not eating.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Question

What am I doing?

Are you going to the party?

Yes, I am./ No, I’m not.

Are they going to the party?

Yes, they are./ No, they aren’t.

Short answer

Do you work in a bank?

Yes, I do./ No, I don’t.

Does she live at home?

Yes, she does./ No, she doesn’t.

The present simple with I/you/we/they has the same form as the infinitive. We usually add -s to the verb with the third person singular, (he, she and it). There are two groups of exceptions.

1 We add -es to verbs that end in -o, -s, -sh, -ch, -x.
   she watches he goes it finishes

2 We change -y to -ies in verbs that end in -y.
   she studies he carries it flies

Frequency adverbs & phrases

We can use frequency expressions with the present simple to talk about how often something happens.

We usually put single words (never, rarely, sometimes, often, usually, generally, always) before the main verb.

He always wakes up late.
Do you usually get up early?

If the verb is to be, we put these words after the verb.
She is always tired.
They were never late.

We can put phrases (once a week, twice a month, every year) at the beginning or the end of the sentence.
He studies twice a week.
Twice a week, he goes to English classes.

Statives

We use the present simple to talk about things that are happening now or around now.

What are you doing? I’m cooking a meal.
My husband’s working very hard at the moment.

Affirmative & Negative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>‘m not eating.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>He/She/It</th>
<th>‘s not eating.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>You/We/They</th>
<th>‘re not eating.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Question

What am I doing?

Are you going to the party?

Yes, I am./ No, I’m not.

Are they going to the party?

Yes, they are./ No, they aren’t.

Short answer

Do you work in a bank?

Yes, I do./ No, I don’t.

Does she live at home?

Yes, she does./ No, she doesn’t.

The present simple with I/you/we/they has the same form as the infinitive. We usually add -s to the verb with the third person singular, (he, she and it). There are two groups of exceptions.

1 We add -es to verbs that end in -o, -s, -sh, -ch, -x.
   she watches he goes it finishes

2 We change -y to -ies in verbs that end in -y.
   she studies he carries it flies

Statives

We cannot normally use statives verbs in the continuous form. Here are some common statives verbs.

agree appear believe belong cost dislike
fit forget hate know like love matter
mean need own prefer remember seem
understand want

Yes, I agree with you. Not I’m agreeing with you.
I understand Italian. Not I’m understanding Italian.
Prepositions of time

month (in January)
year (in 2004)
in +
season (in the summer)
periods of time (in the 1990s, in the 20th century, in the holidays)
the morning, the afternoon, the evening

day(s) (on Monday, on Mondays, on my birthday, on Christmas Day)
dates (on 7th June, on Friday 13th)
Monday morning, Tuesday evening

We use on Mondays (plural) to talk about Mondays in general – something we do every Monday. We use on Monday (singular) to talk about either Mondays in general, or one particular Monday.

On Mondays/Monday, I usually go out with my best friend.

On Monday, I'm seeing the doctor.

at +
time (at 3 o'clock, at dinner time)
night
the weekend
holiday periods (at Easter, at Christmas)

We can make the time more approximate by putting an adverb between at and the time.

at | about, almost, around, just after, just before nearly | two o'clock

FUNCTIONAL LANGUAGE

Invitations & suggestions

Would you like to + infinitive ... ?
Shall we + infinitive ... ?
Let's + infinitive ...

Why don't we + infinitive ... ?
How about + verb + -ing ?
What about + verb + -ing ?

Responses

OK.
Yes, that's a good idea.
Yes, why not?

I'd rather + infinitive ...
I'd rather not.

I'd love to, but I'm afraid I'm busy.
That's very kind of you, but ...

When we say no to an invitation or suggestion, it is polite to give a reason.

WORD LIST

Weddings

bouquet n C
bride n C
bridesmaid n C
bouquet n C
champagne n U
court n C

restaurant n C

honeymoon n C
marriage n C/U
priest n C
reception n C
registry office n C
ring n C
speech n C
wedding cake n C/U

Relationships

ask (sb) out
be crazy about (sb)

have an argument
about (sth)
have (sb) in common
go out with (sb)
get married to (sb)

in love with (sb)

Other words & phrases

active adj
agency n C
degree v
average adj
believe in sth v
bookstore
boss n C
business n C/U
carry on v
cigar n C
cold n C
collection n C
cover n C
death adj
advantage n C
friendly adj
generation n C
government n C
intelligent adj
jacket n C
journalist n C
kid n C
kiss v
magazine n C
matter v
newsagent n C
outgoing adj
perfect adj
personality n C
prefer v
princess n C
prison n C
professor n C
promise v
referee n C
romantic adj
secret adj/n C
share v
single mother n C
smile n C/U
unusual adj
vegetarian adj/n C
vice versa adv
victory n C
yoga n U
5A | Tourist trail

**Speaking**

1. Work in pairs. Discuss these questions.
   - What time of year do tourists come to your country?
   - Which parts of your country do the tourists go to?
   - What do they do there?

**Reading**

1. You are going to read an article about the place in the photograph. Which of these words do you think you will find in the article? Explain why or why not.

   - city
   - fast food
   - jungle
   - path
   - ruins
   - tea bag
   - train
   - valley
   - views

2. Read the article and say if the sentences are true (T) or false (F).

   1. Machu Picchu was built in 1911.
   2. It is extremely popular with tourists.
   3. The only way to Machu Picchu is on foot.
   4. Ana Redondo thinks there are too many tourists.
   5. Tourists leave their rubbish on the Inca Trail.
   6. She thinks the cable car is good for Machu Picchu.
   7. Ana’s organization is trying to stop the cable car.

3. Underline the arguments for and against the cable car. Who do you agree with?

---

**The Ruins of Machu Picchu**

For centuries, the Inca city of Machu Picchu was lost in the jungle. Then, in 1911, the American explorer, Hiram Bingham, discovered the ruins of the city. It is one of the most extraordinary places in the world. The city ruins, the Inca bridge, the mountain views and the beautiful river valley below are all absolutely breathtaking.

Today it is also one of the most popular tourist destinations in the world. Many people choose to follow the Inca Trail, a centuries-old path of 43 km that takes three or four days on foot. Others take the train and then a bus for the last part of the journey.

Now a hotel company is going to build a cable car to the top of Machu Picchu. ‘The cable car is good news for Machu Picchu,’ says a company spokesman. ‘There are going to be a lot more tourists and that means more jobs for the local people. Looking after the ruins is expensive. With the extra money, we can spend more on looking after them.’

However, the plan is not popular in Peru. Ana Redondo, a tour guide, explains the problem. ‘There are already more than 300,000 tourists that go to Machu Picchu every year. The Inca Trail is crowded and dirty with old tea bags and water bottles everywhere. The new cable car is going to bring 400 tourists every hour! The company is also going to build a large hotel and tourist centre with souvenir shops, fast food restaurants and so on. It is the end of Machu Picchu.’

Ana is an activist who belongs to an organization that wants to save Machu Picchu. She says that the organization is going to stop the company’s plans. ‘Tomorrow we are meeting government ministers. Next week some people from UNESCO¹ are coming here to look at the plans. Next month we are organizing an international conference. We are not going to stop until the cable car idea is dead.’

¹ United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization
VOCABULARY: compound nouns

1 We can often put a noun together with another word to make a compound noun. Compounds nouns are sometimes written as one word, sometimes as two words and sometimes with a hyphen in the middle. There are no rules, so use a dictionary if you are not sure.

boyfriend dinner party T-shirt

Read the article again. How many compound nouns can you find?

2 Can you name the objects in the picture below?

3 Match words from column A with words from column B to check your answers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>back</td>
<td>bag</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>camping-gas</td>
<td>book</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>credit</td>
<td>camera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>first-aid</td>
<td>card</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flash</td>
<td>glasses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guide</td>
<td>kit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>insect</td>
<td>knife</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mobile</td>
<td>light</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pen</td>
<td>pack</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleeping</td>
<td>phone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sun</td>
<td>spray</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>video</td>
<td>stove</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Use a dictionary to find out if the compound nouns are written as one or two words.

4 Work in pairs. You are going to walk the Inca Trail to Macchu Picchu. You can take six objects from the picture with you. Decide together which ones you are going to take.

GRAMMAR: future 1 (future plans)

We can use both am/is/are going to + infinitive and the present continuous to talk about plans in the future.

The new cable car is going to bring 400 tourists every hour.
Some people from UNESCO are coming here.

Often we can use either form, but when we want to show that the plan is more arranged/fixed, we use the present continuous.

The company is going to build a large hotel.
(This is their plan.)
Tomorrow, we are meeting government ministers.
(The plan is fixed in our diaries.)

See Language Reference page 54

1 Rearrange the words to make questions.

1 after are do going lesson the to what you?
2 are get going home how to today you?
3 cooking dinner evening is this who your?
4 anything are at doing the weekend you?
5 are birthday doing for next what you your?
6 are going have holiday next to when you your?

2 Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions in exercise 1. Use the expressions in the Useful language box to help you.

Useful language

I’m not sure.
I haven’t decided yet.
It depends ...

3 Imagine that you are the mayor of your town. How can you make your town a better place for tourists?

Work in pairs. Think of six things that you can do to improve your town for tourists. Tell the rest of your class your ideas.

We’re going to build a new airport.
**5B | Planes**

**Speaking**

1. Work in pairs. Think of a long/interesting/boring/frightening journey you have been on. Describe your journey.

**Vocabulary: air travel**

1. Find these things in the pictures.
   - boarding card
   - check-in
   - hand luggage
   - overhead locker
   - seat belt
   - security guard

2. Put the phrases in the correct order.
   - Fasten your seat belt and wait for take-off.
   - Book your flight and get your ticket.
   - Get on the plane and find your seat.
   - Go to the airport terminal.
   - Show your ticket and passport at passport control.
   - Go to the departure gate and show your boarding card.
   - Go to the departure hall and into the duty-free shop.
   - Pack your bag(s).
   - Put your hand luggage in the overhead locker.
   - Go through security.
   - Go to the check-in and check in your luggage.

**Listening**

1. Describe what is happening in the pictures above. Use the vocabulary to help you.

2. (1.42-1.44) Listen and match the conversations 1–3 to the pictures A–C.

3. (1.42-1.44) Listen to the conversations again and choose the correct answer.

1. What is Mike’s seat number?
   - a) 21A
   - b) 23A
   - c) 23F

2. When does his plane board?
   - a) 12.00
   - b) 12.15
   - c) 12.30

3. What is his departure gate?
   - a) 21
   - b) 31
   - c) 41

4. What can’t Mike take on the plane?
   - a) his comb
   - b) his jacket
   - c) his mobile phone

5. Where is Mike going?
   - a) Dublin
   - b) Glasgow
   - c) London

6. What does Mike order to drink?
   - a) coffee
   - b) hot chocolate
   - c) tea
FUNCTIONAL LANGUAGE: requests

PRONUNCIATION: intonation

1 There are many ways of asking for something and asking another person to do something. Look at tapescripts 1.42–1.44 on page 137. Underline all the requests. Then find different ways of responding to the requests and complete the table below.

2 Find five more mistakes in the dialogue and correct them.

I’d
Passenger: Excuse me, I’d like a cup of coffee, please.
Attendant: I’m afraid but we’re not serving drinks any more, sir. The plane is going to land in about twenty minutes.
Passenger: Oh, please, could I just have a cup of coffee? Please!
Attendant: I afraid that’s not possible, sir. Could you to fasten your seat belt and close the table in front of you, please?
Passenger: Well, OK. Er, I wonder if could I go to the toilet before we land.
Attendant: Yes, of course. But can you being quick, please?

3 1.45 To make polite requests, we always say please. Friendly intonation is also important. Listen to these two sentences said in different ways.

Excuse me, could I have a coffee, please?
Can you stand over here, please?

4 1.45 Listen and repeat.

5 1.46 Listen to the requests. Put a tick (√) if they are polite and a cross (×) if they are not.

1 Excuse me, can I have a window seat, please? √
2 Could I get past?
3 I wonder if I could have another glass of water, please.
4 Can you sit down?
5 I’d like a black coffee.
6 Could you put your bag up there, please?
7 Can I see your passport, please?

6 Work in pairs. Practise the dialogue in exercise 2. Remember to use friendly intonation.

Roleplay

7 Work in pairs, A and B. You are going to do two roleplays.

Roleplay 1

A: You are a passenger on a long-distance flight. You want to request some things from the flight attendant. Decide what you want to ask for. Use the ideas on page 129 to help you.

B: You are a flight attendant. Help the passenger.

Roleplay 2

A: You are a flight attendant. One of your passengers is very difficult. Look at the ideas on page 131 and choose some of the problems.

B: You are a passenger. Listen to what the flight attendant asks you to do.
VOCABULARY & SPEAKING: hotels

1. Complete the form below with words and phrases from the box.

   air conditioning  central heating  countryside
gym  lift  minibar  single  twin

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Room</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>town centre</td>
<td>double</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>near the sea</td>
<td>(2) _________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1) _________</td>
<td>(3) _________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>family</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hotel facilities</th>
<th>Room facilities</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>restaurant</td>
<td>shower</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bar</td>
<td>bath</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swimming pool</td>
<td>(6) _________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sauna</td>
<td>(7) _________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(4) _________</td>
<td>satellite TV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>free parking</td>
<td>(8) _________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(5) _________</td>
<td>internet connection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>room service</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Look at the list of room and hotel facilities again. Choose the four most important facilities from the list for the following people:

   1. A family with two children staying at the hotel for two weeks for their summer holiday.
   2. A business person staying for three nights at the hotel for a conference.
   3. A couple staying one night at the hotel. They are going to arrive late and leave early the next day.

3. What are the most important room or hotel facilities for you? Explain your reasons.

   For me, an internet connection is the most important because ...

4. What is the best (or worst) hotel you have ever stayed in? Work in pairs. Ask and answer these questions.
   - How long ago was it?
   - Where was it?
   - How long did you stay?
   - Why did you go there?
   - Who did you go with?
   - What was the hotel like?
   - Was there anything special about the hotel?

LISTENING

1. Look at the photo of a hotel in Brighton (in the south of England). Would you like to stay there? Why or why not?

2. 1.47 Two people went to the hotel for the weekend. Listen to the recording and tick (✓) the problems that they had.

   1. broken lift
   2. cold shower
   3. dirty bathroom
   4. no central heating
   5. room too small
   6. unfriendly hotel manager

3. 1.47 Listen again and put the events in order.

   - They found another hotel.
   - They arrived at the hotel.
   - They gave their key to the woman at reception.
   - They had a cold shower.
   - They paid for the room.
   - They went to get their bags.
   - They went to the cinema.

4. How much can you remember of Nicki and Gavin’s experiences? Tell their story.
**GRAMMAR: future 2 (will)**

We use *will* ('ll) + infinitive when we decide something at the moment of speaking.

I forgot about the shower. I'll ask my husband to fix it. (She is deciding now.)

We use *am/is/are*/*going to* + infinitive when we have already made the decision.

We've got tickets for the cinema. We're going to see the new film. (She decided some time ago.)

> See Language Reference page 54

1 Complete the sentences with 'll and a verb from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>give</th>
<th>see</th>
<th>tell</th>
<th>think</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. So, outside the cinema at eight o'clock? Yes, OK. I ____ you later.
2. Dad, can I borrow the car for the weekend? I ____ about it.
3. Tell me when you arrive, OK? OK, I ____ you a call.
4. What does this word mean? I ____ you later.

2 You are a friendly hotel manager. Some guests have some problems. What do you say?

1. I'm sorry, sir. I'll send someone to look at it.
2. The TV is making a strange noise.
3. We need to get up very early in the morning, but we don't have an alarm clock.
4. There's no water in the minibar.
5. I'm very hungry, but the restaurant is closed.
6. The door to the gym is locked.
7. There's a spider in the bath!

3 Complete the dialogue between a guest and a hotel manager with 'll or the correct form of *going to*.

Guest: Excuse me, I (1) ____ visit the old part of town this afternoon. Can you tell me the way?
Manager: Yes, no problem. I (2) ____ give you a map.
Guest: Is it far?
Manager: No, not far. Do you want to walk or take a bus? It's a nice walk.
Guest: Oh, well, I (3) ____ walk, I think.
Manager: Or, if you like, I (4) ____ take you in my car. I (5) ____ do some shopping this afternoon.
Guest: That's kind of you. Thanks. When (6) ____ (you) leave?
Manager: About four o'clock.
Guest: Great. I (7) ____ see you here at four o'clock.
Manager: OK. I (8) ____ see you later.

4 **1.48** Listen to the recording to check your answers. Then work in pairs and practise the dialogue.

---

**DID YOU KNOW?**

1. What do you think the connection is between Las Vegas, the Eiffel Tower and a waterfall? Read the text to find out.

It is the hotel capital of the world. It has fourteen of the biggest hotels in the world and more than 125,000 hotel rooms. Many of the 37 million tourists who come here every year come to see the hotels. The Rio Hotel, for example, has an Ipanema beach, waterfalls, four swimming pools and sixteen restaurants. At the Venetian Hotel, you can take a gondola, and you can climb the Eiffel Tower or visit the Arc de Triomphe at the Paris Hotel.

Many tourists never go outside their hotels, which have everything you could possibly want: bars, restaurants, sports centres and pools, concerts, cinemas, theatres, casinos – even theme parks. In fact, there is little reason to leave your hotel. The only thing to visit is ... more hotels!

2. Work in pairs. Ask and answer these questions.

- What else do you know about Las Vegas?
- Do you know anybody who has been there? Would you like to go?
- What famous hotels are there in your country? Why are they famous?
Heaven Holidays
Looking for something different? We have the holiday for you.

Sea holidays
Scuba Safari
Experience the beauty of the seas of Borneo
Titanic Times
An unforgettable dive to the wreck of the Titanic
Dolphin Days
Swim with the dolphins of the Bahamas

Adventure holidays
Route 66
An incredible journey from Chicago to Los Angeles by Harley-Davidson
Mountain Memories
Cycling through the volcanic valleys of Reunion Island
Mach 3
Fly a Russian MiG-25 jet and see the world from above the clouds

Haunted holidays
Monster Party
Looking for the Loch Ness monster (includes visits to whisky distilleries)
Feast of Lanterns
Experience the magic of the Hungry Ghost Festival in Malaysia.
Yeti Hunt
Two weeks in the high Himalayas on the trail of the yeti

History trails
Great Wall
Explore the villages and temples of Mongolia and northern China
Mayan Treasures
See the lost Mayan pyramids in the rain forest of Mexico.
Alexander the Great
Follow the path of Alexander the Great through the historic cities of Turkey

2 Read about some more holidays. What type of holiday are they?

1 Meet the Shojo
Explore the Pacific islands of southern Japan in the company of Shojo ghosts

2 Siberian White Water
Kayak down the Katun River

3 Inca Gold
Follow the trail of the conquistadors and discover the ancient Peruvian cities

4 Grand Canyon
Paragliding and sky diving in America’s Wild West

5 Arctic Ice
A visit by submarine to a wreck under the Arctic ice

6 1492
Discover the Jamaica and Puerto Rico of Christopher Columbus
3 Match the paragraphs 1-4 to the holidays in the webpage advertisement.

1 I’m really looking forward to riding the motorbike. I hope to go with a friend, but if he hasn’t got enough money, I intend to go alone. I’ve got a brother in Los Angeles and I plan to stay with him when I get there.

2 We would like to learn some Chinese before we go, because we want to meet lots of people when we’re there. My wife is looking forward to seeing the wall, but I’m more interested in finding out about the people who live in that part of the world.

3 I know it’s going to be difficult so I plan to do a lot of practice on my bike before I go. I intend to take a lot of photos of the volcanoes and the animals and everything. I hope to get some pictures of the monkeys. I want to have an exhibition of the photos when I get back.

4 I would really like to see the monster, but it doesn’t matter too much. I’m also interested in seeing Scotland and I plan to visit the village where my father was born. My husband is looking forward to tasting all the different whiskies.

4 Which of these holidays do not interest you? Why?

VOCABULARY: verb patterns

1 Choose the correct form of the verb to complete the sentences.

1 I hope to find / finding the yeti.
2 I intend to take / taking some Turkish lessons.
3 I’m very interested in learn / learning more about the yeti.
4 I’m looking forward to swim / swimming with the dolphins.
5 I plan to spend / spending two weeks in the jungle.
6 I want to visit / visiting the old temples.
7 I would like to read / reading more about Alexander.

Find the phrases in bold in Reading exercise 3 to check your answers.

2 Choose one of the holidays from the advertisement. Prepare answers to these questions.

• Which holiday do you want to go on?
• Would you like to go with another person or alone?
• Why are you interested in that holiday?
• Do you intend to prepare for the holiday in any way?
• What do you plan to take with you?
• What are you looking forward to most in the holiday?
• What do you hope to do when you are there?

3 Now work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions.

PRONUNCIATION: silent letters

1 Circle the silent letters in the words below.

1 castle 5 receipt 9 hour
2 climb 6 ghost 10 wreck
3 foreign 7 Wednesday
4 whole

2 1.49 Listen to the recording to check your answers.

3 How many more words can you think of with silent letters?

SPEAKING

1 Two friends from Australia are coming to visit you for a week. It is their first visit to your country. You are going to be their guide.

First of all, decide what you intend to do with them. Look at the list and use ideas of your own.

• visit different parts of the country
• things to do and see
• means of transport
• places to stay
• places and things to eat
• people to introduce them to
• things to do on the last night

2 Work in pairs and discuss your plans. Then tell the rest of the class.
GRAMMAR

Going to

We can use going to + infinitive to talk about plans in the future. The action has been decided before the person speaks.

* We’re going to save money to buy a flat.
* I’m going to buy a present for Amanda. It’s her birthday.

### Affirmative & Negative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Affirmative</th>
<th>Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>‘m going to save money to buy a flat.</td>
<td>‘m not going to save money to buy a flat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He/She/It</td>
<td>‘s going to phone him tonight.</td>
<td>‘s not going to phone him tonight.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You/We/They</td>
<td>‘re going to phone him tonight.</td>
<td>‘re not going to phone him tonight.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Question

When is he/she/it going to phone him tonight?

### Short answer

Are you going to phone? Yes, I am. / No, I’m not.
Is she going to phone? Yes, she is. / No, she isn’t.

When we talk about future plans with the verb go, it is normal to ‘drop’ the infinitive, to go.

I’m going to the cinema this evening.

Present continuous for future

We can also use the present continuous to talk about future plans. We can often use either the present continuous or going to without changing the meaning, but when we want to show that the plan is more arranged or more fixed, we use the present continuous.

* The teachers are going to ask for more money.
  (This is their plan.)
* We’re meeting the managers at ten on Monday.
  (The plan is fixed in our diaries.)

See page 44 for more information about the present continuous.

### Will + infinitive

We use will + infinitive when we decide something at the moment of speaking.

Don’t worry. I’ll ask my husband to fix the window this afternoon. (She is deciding now.)

We sometimes use will to make offers.
If you like, I’ll take you in my car.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Affirmative &amp; Negative</th>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Short answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>will</td>
<td>Will you phone?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He/She/It</td>
<td>won’t</td>
<td>Yes, I will. / No, I won’t.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You/We/They</td>
<td>phone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**FUNCTIONAL LANGUAGE**

**Requests**

* I’d like + noun.
  * I’d like to + infinitive ...
* Can I + infinitive ... ?
* Could I + infinitive ... (please)?
* I wonder if I could + infinitive ...
* Can you + infinitive ... ?
* Could you + infinitive ... ?

**Responses**

* Yes, sure.
  * Yes, of course.
  * Yes, certainly.
* I’m afraid that ...
* I’m sorry, but ...

When we say no to a request, it is polite to give a reason.
WORD LIST

Compound nouns

backpack n C * /baepkaek/
boyfriend n C * /boi/fronf/
cable car n C * /seilb kau/
camping-gas stove n C * /keempin’ gass tawv/
credit card n C * /kredit kard/
dinner party n C * /dina part/
first-aid kit n C * /fairst ‘ed kit/
flashlight n C * /fle∫tʃard/
guidebook n C * /gaid buk/
insect spray n U * /insi k sprei/
mobile phone n C * /moiblu tawm/
penknife n C * /pen niif/
ninglasses n plur /′sanglarsz/
tea bag n C * /ti bæg/
tour guide n C * /tou gaid/
T-shirt n C * /′tiart/
video camera n C * /′vidio kæmərə/
water bottle n C * /′wɔtə bɔtəl/

Air travel

board v * /bɔ:ld/
boarding card n C * /bɔrdin kɔrd/
buk v * /buk/
check in v * /tʃek ɪn/
departure n C * /də′pɔ:rtʃə/
duty-free adj /ˈdjuːtɪ ′fri/ 
fasten v *** /ˈfæstən/
flight n C *** /flait/ 
gate n C *** /gæt/ 
hall n C *** /hɔl/ 
hand luggage n U * /hænd ′laɪdʒəs/ 
handbag n C * /hænd ′baɪdʒ/ 
lockers n C * /′loʊksəz/ 
luggage n U * /′laɪdʒɪdʒ/ 
overhead adj /′əʊvər/ 
pack v * /pæk/ 
passport n C * /′pɑːspɔrt/ 
short stay n U *** /′ʃɔt ′stei/ 
seat n C *** /si:t/ 
seat belt n C * /′si:t ′bɛlt/ 
security n U *** /′sɪkərti/ 
security guard n C * /′sɪkərteɪ/ 
take-off n C/U * /teɪk ′ɒf/ 
terminal n C * /′tɜːmɪnɔl/ 
ticket n C *** /′tɪkt/ 

Hotels

air conditioning n U * /ˈɛə kɔndiʃn/ 
central heating n U * /senterəl hɪtɪŋ/ 
connection n C *** /kənˈnektʃən/ 
country-side n U *** /ˈkʌtriˌsaɪd/ 
facility n C *** /fæ′sələtɪ/ 
gym n C * /dʒɪm/ 
hot n C * /hɔt/ 
location n C *** /ləkˈeɪʃən/ 
minibar n C * /ˈmɪni bɔr/ 
room service n U * /rʊm sɜːrvɪs/ 
satellite n C * /ˈsætələt/ 
sauna n C * /səˈnuə/ 
shower n C * /ˈʃaʊər/ 
single adj ** /′sɪŋgl/ 
twin adj ** /twɪn/ 

Verb patterns

be interested in + verb + -ing ***

be interested in + verb + -ing ***
be interested in + verb + -ing ***
be interested in + verb + -ing ***
be interested in + verb + -ing ***
be interested in + verb + -ing ***
be interested in + verb + -ing ***
be interested in + verb + -ing ***
be interested in + verb + -ing ***
be interested in + verb + -ing ***
be interested in + verb + -ing ***

Other words & phrases

activist n C /′æk tɪvist/ 
afterwards adv ** /ˌɑːftəə/ 
ancient adj ** /ənˈsɪənt/ 
attendant n C /ətˈendənt/ 
bath n C ** /bɑːθ/ 
bell n C ** /bɛl/ 
breathtaking adj /′breɪθtɪk/ 
build v **** /bɪld/ 
build a hotel v ** /′bɪld ə ′hɔtel/ 
calm adj *** /kælm/ 
capital n C *** /′kæpɪtal/ 
casino n C /′kæsɪnɔ/ 
cleanliness n U * /′kliːnliːnəs/ 
climb v **** /klɑːm/ 
cloud n C *** /klaʊd/ 
comfortable adj ** /kəm′fərləb/ 
combed n C/v /′kɔm(b) / 
depend v ** /diˈpend/ 
depend on v /′diˈpend ən/ 
depend on v /′diˈpend ən/ 
depend on v /′diˈpend ən/ 
depend on v /′diˈpend ən/ 
depend on v /′diˈpend ən/ 
depend on v /′diˈpend ən/ 
depend on v /′diˈpend ən/ 

fast food n U /′fæst fuss/ 
festival n C * /′fɛstvəl/ 
fix v ** /fiks/ 
ghost n C * /′gəust/ 
give up v /′gɪv ′ʌp/ 
hang on v /′hæŋ ′ɔn/ 
historic adv /′hɪstɔrɪk/ 
horrible adj * /′hɔrəbl/ 
hunt n C/v /′hʌnt/ 
ice n U *** /′aɪs/ 
iercer n C * /′ɪnkrɛsər/ 
journey n C *** /′dʒɔrni/ 
Jungle n C/U /′dʒʌŋgl/ 
kayak n C /′keɪək/ 
key n C *** /ki/ 
local adj * /′ləʊkəl/ 
lock v ** /′lɔk/ 

luxury n U /′lʊkəri/ 
magic n C * /′meɪdʒɪk/ 
map n C * /′meɪp/ 
metal n C/U *** /′meɪtəl/ 
mince v *** /′mɪns/ 
mission n C * /′mɪʃən/ 
monster n C /′mɑːstər/ 
motorbike n C /′mɔːtərˌbaɪk/ 
nervous adj ** /′nɜrvəs/ 
object n C *** /′obzəkt/ 
organization n C *** /ˌɔgranɪzaʃən/ 
path n C *** /′pɑːθ/ 
receipt n C * /′riːtʃət/ 
rubbish n U * /′rʌbɪʃ/ 
rucks n C /′rʌks/ 
save v *** /′seiv/ 
search v ** /′sɜːtʃ/ 
shout v *** /′ʃaut/ 
sign n C *** /′sain/ 
sky diving n U * /′skeɪ ′daɪvɪŋ/ 
smell n C/v ** /′smɛl/ 
souvenir n C /′soʊvənɪr/ 
spider n C /′spiːdər/ 
speaker n C /′speəkər/ 
stairs n C *** /′steərəs/ 
submarine n C /′subˌmərən/ 
temple n C /′tempəl/ 
throw v *** /′θru/ 
trail n C * /′treɪl/ 
treasure n C/U * /′treɪzə/ 
vacancy n C /′væksən/ 
valley n C * /′væli/ 
view n C *** /′viː/ 
walls n C *** /′wɔlz/ 
waterfall n C /′wɔtəfɔːl/ 
welcome v ** /′welkəm/ 
wreck n C /′rɛk/ 
yacht n C /′jɔt/
Junk food

Vocabulary: food

1. Look at these items of food from America. Tick (✓) the items on the shopping list that you can see.

2. How often do you eat the food on the list? Which of them do you think are 'junk food'?

Reading

1. Look at the picture of Elvis Presley. What sort of food do you think he liked?

2. Now read the book review. While you read, put a 1 next to the facts you find most surprising.

Eating the Elvis Presley Way

David Adler  Blake Publishing

There are more than 400 books about Elvis Presley. There are books about his music, his films, his life, his death, his religion - and his food. There is the Presley Family Cookbook, The Elvis Presley Cookbook, Elvis' Favorite Recipes, and now Eating the Elvis Presley Way. What makes this book different? To begin with, this is not a cookbook. You can find recipes here, but this book is the story of Elvis' life. It is the story of the food that he ate and the people who cooked it for him. And an extremely interesting life it was, too.

The food in the first two or three chapters is quite normal - baby food, boring school dinners, army meals when he was doing his military service, that sort of thing. But later, when Elvis was rich and famous, it is a very different story. With all the money in the world, Elvis chose to eat like a child. Elvis got up late and his first meal of the day was breakfast at five o'clock in the afternoon: bacon and eggs, or sausage and eggs. After that, it was snacks: pizza and hot dogs, hamburgers and fries, chocolate and cakes - all day and every day. Elvis even had a fridge in his bedroom for his favorite snacks.

As the years passed, Elvis' eating problems became really serious. One day, when Elvis was going to the White House to meet the President, he was feeling a bit hungry and ate 250g of chocolate and then 12 donuts in his taxi. Another time, he ordered a large ice cream for breakfast. He ate it quickly, ordered a second, a third, a fourth and a fifth before falling asleep again. Elvis' last meal before he died was four scoops of ice cream with six chocolate cookies.

Elvis was an extremely unhappy man. His food and the drugs that he took made him feel good, but killed him in the end. It's a fairly sad story, but a fascinating one, too.

Recommended ★★★★★
3 Read the review again and say if the sentences are true (T) or false (F).
1 This is the first book about Elvis Presley and food.
2 It is different from the other books about Elvis and food.
3 His eating problems started when he was a child.
4 He had breakfast early in the morning.
5 He ate a lot of junk food.
6 He had food in his bedroom.
7 The President gave him a large box of chocolates.
8 Elvis didn’t like ice cream very much.

4 Complete the definitions with an adjective from the review.
1 When someone is f____, a lot of people know their name.
2 A f____ story, place or person is very interesting.
3 Your f____ thing or person is the one that you like best.
4 You feel h____ when you want to eat.
5 When you are unhappy, you feel s____.
6 When you have a s____ problem, you are very worried about it.

5 What else do you know about Elvis Presley? Why do you think that Elvis had eating problems?

GRAMMAR: modifiers

We can make an adjective stronger or weaker with a modifier. We put this before the adjective.

**Weak**

* a bit hungry

**Medium**

* quite _____
* fairly _____

**Strong**

* very _____
* really _____
* extremely _____

▶ See Language Reference page 64

1 Underline examples of modifiers before adjectives in the book review. Use them to complete the examples in the language box.

2 Put the modifiers in the correct place in the sentences.
1 Burger Paradise is always busy. (very)
2 I like The New York Donut Shop but the service is slow. (a bit)
3 I think that the chicken burgers at The Alabama Chicken are good. (really)
4 The fast food shops on Main Square are expensive. (fairly)
5 The hot dogs at The Happy Sandwich are nice. (quite)
6 The Magic Hamburger in my town is popular. (extremely)

3 Make six sentences about places where you can eat out in your town. Use modifiers and adjectives. Here are some more adjectives that you can use.

cheap  dirty  fashionable  friendly  healthy

chef  lively  small  unhealthy

SPEAKING

1 Do you know any ‘theme’ restaurants like the Hard Rock Café or Planet Hollywood? What is special about them?
   Have you ever been to a ‘theme’ restaurant? What was it like?

2 Work in pairs. Plan your own ‘theme’ restaurant. Use these questions to help you.
   • What is the theme of your restaurant? (sport, music, cinema, a famous person, a country, a historical period, etc)
   • What is the name of your restaurant?
   • What kind of food and drink do you serve?
   • What does the restaurant look like?
   • Do the waiters and waitresses wear uniforms? What kind?
   • What kind of music do you play?
   • How much does a meal cost in your restaurant?

3 Describe your restaurant to other students in the class. Decide which restaurant is the best.
6B | Slow food

Are You A Foodie?
Answer our questionnaire to find out if you are a foodie.

1 How long is a typical meal in your home?
   a) less than 30 minutes
   b) 30–90 minutes
   c) more than 90 minutes

2 How often do you eat in front of the TV?
   a) less than once a week
   b) once a week
   c) more than once a week

3 How many of the following do you eat at least once a week?
   a) crisps     b) chips
   c) chocolate biscuits
   d) microwave dinner

4 How many recipe books do you have?
   a) 0     b) 1–5
   c) more than 5

5 How often do you spend more than one hour preparing a meal?
   a) less than once a week
   b) once a week
   c) more than once a week

6 How often do you go to a restaurant (not fast food or pizza)?
   a) less than twice a month
   b) 2–4 times a month
   c) more than 4 times a month

Answers on page 128.

Speaking
1 Work in pairs and do the quiz. Take it in turns to ask the questions. (A foodie is someone who enjoys eating or cooking different types of food.)

2 Now turn to page 128. Add up your points and read the description for your score. Does it describe you well? Who is the biggest ‘foodie’ in the class?

Listening
1 1.50 Listen to part of a radio interview about food in Italy. Choose the best title for the programme.

   1 How to make Bolognese sauce
   2 Fast food in Italy
   3 Slow food in Bologna
   4 Tagliatelle or spaghetti?

Spaghetti Bolognese
(spaghetti with a sauce made with tomatoes, meat, onions and herbs)

2 1.50 Read the passage below and then listen again. Underline the incorrect information and explain what is wrong.

The radio presenter is in Bologna, not Rome.

The radio presenter is in Rome, an Italian city where people eat Spaghetti Bolognese. Spaghetti is a speciality of Bologna. Bolognese sauce from supermarkets is made from many different ingredients. It is very similar to Ragu sauce. Ragu is quicker to prepare.

‘Slow food’ is a movement that started in France in 1997. It has members in about twenty countries and they are interested in making food more enjoyable and more traditional.

3 Do you agree with Maura that good food is slow food? Why or why not?

What traditional foods are there in your country? What parts of the country do they come from?
VOCABULARY: adjectives (opposites)

1 Complete the words by putting vowels (a, e, i, o, u) in the spaces. Then match the adjectives in column A to their opposites in column B.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>b a d</td>
<td>a d f f c l t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n t _ r e s t _ n g</td>
<td>b s m p l</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c m p l c t d</td>
<td>c g o o d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>_ s y</td>
<td>d s l w</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f s t</td>
<td>e b r n g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h _ l t h y</td>
<td>f t r d t n l</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m d r n</td>
<td>g n h l t h y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Find an adjective in exercise 1 that you can use with the words below.

1 costume dancing marriage song teacher
   traditional
2 face film person picture place
3 answer explanation story problem question
4 baby diet eating food lifestyle

3 Choose an adjective from exercise 1 and think of five things you can describe with that adjective.

Work in pairs. Tell your partner the five things.
Your partner must guess the adjective that you chose.

GRAMMAR: comparatives

We use the comparative form to compare two things or people.

We make the comparative of short adjectives with the adjective + -er (+ than).
slow → slower The service in the restaurant was slower than usual.
nice → nicer The sauce is nicer with spaghetti.

easy → easier It’s easier than you think.

2 When the adjective ends in -y, remove the -y and add -ier.
big → bigger Can we have a bigger table, please?

We make the comparative of longer adjectives with more + adjective (+ than).

It’s a more traditional recipe.
Food is more interesting than that.

There are two very common irregular comparatives.
good → better (than) bad → worse (than)

See Language Reference page 64

PRONUNCIATION: word stress 1

1 Listen to these words and count the syllables.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>heal</td>
<td>/ thy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 h e a l t h y</td>
<td>6 c o m p l i c a t e d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 d i f f i c u l t</td>
<td>7 s i m p l e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 e n j o y a b l e</td>
<td>8 a r t i f i c i a l</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 m o d e r n</td>
<td>9 t r a d i t i o n a l</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 i m p o r t a n t</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Mark the stress in each word and say the words.

heal / thy

3 Listen to the recording again to check your answers.
Coffee Break

1. Can you imagine getting up in the morning without a coffee for breakfast? What is a good meal without a coffee at the end of it? Coffee is probably the world’s favourite drink, but most of us never give it a second thought. How much do you know about coffee?

2. The Turks gave us the word coffee and the Italians gave us espresso and cappuccino, but Finland is the biggest coffee-drinking country in the world. Coffee originally came from Ethiopia, but Colombia and Brazil are now the most important coffee-producing countries.

3. There are more than 100 different varieties of coffee bean and Jamaican Blue Mountain is said to have the best taste. However, the most expensive coffee in the world (at $660/kilo) is Kopi Luwak. An Indonesian cat called Paradoxurus is especially fond of coffee beans and Kopi Luwak is made from its droppings!

4. We all know coffee addicts – people who can do nothing in the morning until their second or third cup of coffee. The most famous coffee addicts in the world were probably the French writers Balzac (40 cups a day) and Voltaire (more than 50 cups a day). Beethoven was also a coffee lover – he always counted 60 beans for each cup of coffee that he made.

5. The most fashionable coffee bars in the US now serve ‘coffee art’. Artists in California draw leaves, hearts and other designs in your coffee.

SPEAKING

1. Work in pairs. Discuss these questions.
   - What is your favourite drink?
   - Where and when do you drink it?
   - Do you prefer tea or coffee? How do you take it? (white/black, strong/weak, with/without sugar)
   - What drinks are traditional in your country?

READING

1. Read the magazine article about coffee.
   Match the pictures A–E to the paragraphs 1–5.

2. Read the article again. Explain the connection between coffee and the countries below.

   1. Brazil is an important coffee-producing country.
   2. Finland
   3. France
   4. Indonesia
   5. Jamaica
   6. The United States
   7. Turkey

3. Find words in the article that match the definitions.

   1. at the beginning = o______
   2. kinds, sorts = v______
   3. the fruit of the coffee plant = b______
   4. people who cannot stop taking a drug = a______
GRAMMAR: superlatives

We use the superlative form to compare more than two things or people.

We make the superlative of short adjectives with the + adjective + -est.
  cheap ➔ the cheapest
  large ➔ the largest
  hot ➔ the hottest
  happy ➔ the happiest

Finland is the biggest coffee-drinking country in the world.

We make the superlative of longer adjectives with the + most + adjective.
  the most interesting
  the most traditional
  The most expensive coffee in the world is Kopi Luwak.

There are two very common irregular superlatives.
  good ➔ the best  bad ➔ the worst
  Jamaican Blue Mountain has the best taste.

> See Language Reference page 64

1 Find six examples of superlatives in the article about coffee.
2 Complete the sentences in the quiz. Put the adjectives in brackets into the superlative form.

Amazing Food Facts

1 (expensive) meal in the world was in London in 2001 and cost
  a) £24,000  b) £44,000  c) £84,000 for six people.
2 (good) caviar in the world comes from
  a) the Caspian Sea  b) Lake Titicaca in Bolivia
  c) the Eastern Mediterranean.
3 (large) pub in the world is the Mathäser in Munich, Germany.
   a) 5,500  b) 7,500  c) 9,500 people.
4 (big) doughnut in the world was made in New York in 1993.
   It was almost
   a) 3m  b) 5m  c) 10m in diameter.
5 (long) hot dog in the world was made in Chicago. It measured
   a) 2m  b) 3m  c) 8m.
6 (popular) fast food in Britain is
   a) hamburgers  b) pizzas  c) sandwiches.
7 (heavy) tomato in the world weighed
   a) 15kg  b) 30kg  c) 50kg.
8 Samuel Adams Triple Bock is (strong) beer in the world. It contains
   a) 12%  b) 15%  c) 18% alcohol.

3 Work in pairs. Choose the correct answers in the quiz.
4 1.52 Listen to the recording to check your answers.
5 Work in pairs. Think of places you know where you can drink (cafés, bars, hotels etc). Make sentences about these places, using superlatives. You can use adjectives from the box or think of your own.
  bad  big  cheap  expensive  fashionable  friendly  good  near to the school  traditional

Central Café is the nearest café to the school.

DID YOU KNOW?

1 Read the text and answer the questions.

Starbucks started as a small coffee shop in Seattle. In the 1990s, the company grew and it now serves coffee to more than 11 million customers around the world every week.

With more than 6,000 stores in the US, Japan, the UK, China, Spain, Austria and other countries, Starbucks is becoming the McDonalds of coffee.

- How many of the following can you find near where you live?
  Burger King  Dominos Pizza
  Häagen Dazs  Kentucky Fried Chicken
  McDonalds  Starbucks

- What other big food chains do you know?
- What do you like eating or drinking in these places?
Class meal

**Speaking**

1. Work in pairs. Look at the types of restaurant in the box and discuss these questions.
   - Which type of food have you tried?
   - Which do you like best?
   - Which ones can you find in your city/town?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Italian</th>
<th>French</th>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>Indian</th>
<th>Mexican</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

2. What restaurants do you know in your town? Which is:
   - the best?
   - the most fashionable?
   - the most popular?
   - the cheapest?

3. Which restaurant in your town would you choose for a class meal. Why?

**Vocabulary: eating out**

1. Look at the restaurant bill and find words that match the definitions.

   1. waiter
   2. the person who takes your order = ______
   3. the last course = ______
   4. the first course = ______
   5. tax = ______
   6. a fixed choice of two or three courses = ______
   7. the money you pay for your waiter/waitress = ______
   8. the most important part of the meal = ______

2. How much do you pay for the items on the bill in restaurants in your town? Is La Vie en Rose more or less expensive?

**Listening**

1. **1.53** Listen to a man booking a restaurant and complete the booking form.

2. **1.53** Listen to the conversation again. Underline the words that you hear.

   1. I’m afraid our first / next / last booking is at 9.30, sir.
   2. We all make bookings / mistakes / progress, don’t we?
   3. There’s a very nice / pretty / romantic table for two next to the window.
   4. That sounds excellent / marvellous / perfect.
   5. It’s our French class’ annual / monthly / weekly meal.

---

**LA VIE EN ROSE**

5***** French cooking in a romantic restaurant near the river.

Join Manu and Gérard, our French chefs, for a true French experience.

For that special occasion …

27 Bridge Street
Tel: 727 4848

---

**11/12/05 22.13**

**LA VIE EN ROSE**

Your waiter today is 03 Jean-Paul

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>£</th>
<th>€</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 x set menu @</td>
<td>19.00</td>
<td>26.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 x starter (mixed salad) @</td>
<td>4.50</td>
<td>6.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 x main course (cassoulet) @</td>
<td>11.50</td>
<td>15.87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 x dessert (lemon sorbet) @</td>
<td>4.20</td>
<td>5.80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 x house red @</td>
<td>15.00</td>
<td>20.70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 x 1 litre mineral water @</td>
<td>3.50</td>
<td>4.83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12% Service charge</td>
<td>6.92</td>
<td>9.56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sub total</td>
<td>64.62</td>
<td>91.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VAT (12.5%)</td>
<td>8.08</td>
<td>11.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td>72.70</td>
<td>100.34</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Thank you for choosing La Vie en Rose.
Tel: 0800 724 3004 Fax: 0800 724 3005

---

**LA VIE EN ROSE**

**Booking Form**

Customer name ____________________________

Number of people ______

DAY: Mon / Tue / Wed / Thu / Fri / Sat

TIME: Lunchtime: 12.00 / 12.30 / 1.00 / 1.30 / 2.00
       Evening: 7.00 / 7.30 / 8.00 / 8.30 / 9.00 / 9.30

Smoking / Non-smoking
FUNCTIONAL LANGUAGE 1: making a reservation

1 Who says the sentences below: the customer (C) or the waiter (W)?

1 I’d like to book a table for Friday, please.
2 Certainly, madam. For how many people?
3 What time would you like, madam?
4 That’s fine.
5 Could I take your name, please, madam?
6 We look forward to seeing you.

2  1.54 Listen to the recording to check your answers.

Roleplay

3 Work in pairs. Practise making a restaurant reservation. Take it in turns to be the customer. Choose the day, the time and the number of people. Begin like this:

Good afternoon. This is … . Can I help you?

FUNCTIONAL LANGUAGE 2: in a restaurant

1  1.57 Look at the picture and listen to a conversation. Which comes first: the picture or the conversation?

2  1.57 Listen to the conversation again. Put the sentences in the correct order.

2 Can I take your coats?
3 Could we have a bottle of house red, please?
3 Excuse me, have you got an ashtray?
3 I have a reservation for ten people.
3 Let me show you to your tables.
3 That was delicious.
3 Would you like something to drink?

Roleplay

3 Work in groups. You are going to act out a short sketch in a restaurant. Decide what kind of restaurant it is and who is the waiter.

Useful language

Would you like …? I’d like …  to have the bill/to see the menu
Have you got …? Could we have …? I’ll have …  a drink/an ashtray/something to drink/
the bill/the house white
GRAMMAR

Modifiers
We can make an adjective stronger or weaker with a modifier, for example, quite, very.

Weak
a bit

Medium
quite
fairly

Strong
very
really
extremely

I feel a bit sad.
We usually eat quite healthy food.
It’s an extremely expensive restaurant.

Comparatives & superlatives
We use comparatives to compare two things or people. We use than to join the two things we are comparing.

Fresh sauce is healthier than sauce in bottles.
This computer is faster than the old one.

We use superlatives to compare more than two things or people. We often use in after a superlative.

He is the richest man in England.
They serve the best hamburgers in our town.

With short adjectives, we usually add -er/-est.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>strong</th>
<th>stronger</th>
<th>the strongest</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>weak</td>
<td>weaker</td>
<td>the weakest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When an adjective ends in -e, we add -r/-st.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>large</th>
<th>larger</th>
<th>the largest</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nice</td>
<td>nicer</td>
<td>the nicest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When an adjective ends with -y after a consonant, we change the -y to -ier/-iest.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>busy</th>
<th>busier</th>
<th>the busiest</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>easy</td>
<td>easier</td>
<td>the easiest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When an adjective with one syllable ends with a consonant after a vowel, we double the consonant.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>big</th>
<th>bigger</th>
<th>the biggest</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hot</td>
<td>hotter</td>
<td>the hottest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

With longer adjectives, we add more/the most.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>modern</th>
<th>more modern</th>
<th>the most modern</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>traditional</td>
<td>more traditional</td>
<td>the most traditional</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some adjectives have irregular comparative and superlative forms.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>good</th>
<th>better</th>
<th>the best</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bad</td>
<td>worse</td>
<td>the worst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>far</td>
<td>further</td>
<td>the furthest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We can make negative comparisons with less/the least.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>strong</th>
<th>less strong</th>
<th>the least strong</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>busy</td>
<td>less busy</td>
<td>the least busy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>modern</td>
<td>less modern</td>
<td>the least modern</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

FUNCTIONAL LANGUAGE

Making a reservation
I’d like to book a table for ...
Certainly, Madam/Sir.
What time would you like?
For how many people?
Could I take your name, please?
We look forward to seeing you.
I’m afraid we’re fully booked.

In the restaurant
Can I take your coats?
Let me show you your table.
Would you like to + infinitive … ?

I’d like to + infinitive …
Have you got + noun?
Could we have + noun?
I’ll have + noun.
WORD LIST

Food

bacon n U /ˈbeɪkən/  
beer n C/U * /baɪr/  
breakfast n C ** /ˈbrɛkfast/  
cake n C/U ** /keɪk/  
caviar n U /ˈkaʊər/  
chicken n C/U ** /tʃɪkən/  
chip n C ** /tʃɪp/  
chocolate n C/U ** /ˈkɒtʃəlɔt/  
coffee n C/U *** /ˈkɔfɪ/  
cookbook n C /ˈkʊkbʊk/  
cookie n C /ˈkʊki/  
crisp n C /ˈkrɪsp/  
diet n C ** /ˈdɛɪt/  
donut/doughnut n C /ˈdɒŋut/  

(English) egg n C * /ɛg/  
(french) fries n pl /frɛz/  
fruit n U *** /ˈfruːt/  
ham n U /ˈhæm/  
hamburger n C /ˈhæmbɜːrɡə/  
hot dog n C /ˈhɒt dɒg/  

ice cream n C /ˈaɪs krɪm/  
junk food n C /ˈdʒʌŋk fɔːd/  
lemon n C/U /ˈlemən/  
meal n C *** /miːl/  

(mineral water n U /ˈmɪn(ə)ral wɔːtə/  
noodles n plur /ˈnʌdlz/  
pasta n U /ˈpæstə/  
peanut butter n U /ˈpniːt bətə/  

(pizza n C/U *** /ˈpɪtsə/  
(potato n C ** /ˈpɑːtətəʊ/  
recipe n C * /ˈrɛˈsiːpi/  
rice n U * /raɪs/  
(salad n C/U * /ˈsæləd/  
(salt n U * /sɔːl/  
(sauce n C/U * /sɔːs/  
(sausage n C /sɔsɪdʒ/  
(snak n C /snek/  
(sorbet n U /ˈsɔrbiːt/  

(steak n C/U /ˈstoʊki/  
(strawberry n C /ˈstrɔːbr(ə)ri/  
(sugar n U ** /ˈʃʊgər/  
(tomato n C /ˈtəmətoʊ/  
(yoghurt/yogurt n C/U /ˈjɒɡər/  

Eating out

bill n C *** /bil/  
course n C *** /ˈkaʊs/  
dessert n C/U * /ˈdɛzərt/  
main course n C /meɪn kɔːs/  

(set menu n C /ˈsæt mənəu/  
(starter n C /ˈstɑːtər/  
VAT n U /ˈvæt/  
waiter n C /ˈwɪtər/  
waitress n C /ˈwɪtrəs/  

Other words & phrases

addict n C /ˈædɪkt/  
alcohol n U * /ˈælkəhol/  
ammonial adj ** /ˈkæmniəl/  
army n C *** /ˈɑːmi/  
artificial adj * /ɑːrtɪˈfɪʃl/  
ashtray n C /ˈæʃtræɪ/  
avenue n C /ˈeɪvənjuː/  
bean n C /ˈbiːn/  
bedroom n C ** /ˈbɛdruːm/  
boiling adj * /ˈbɔːrɪŋ/  
box n C *** /ˈbɒks/  
busy adj *** /ˈbɪzi/  
chapter n C *** /ˈtʃæptər/  
chemical n C *** /ˈkɛmɪkəl/  

costume n C /ˈkɒstjʊm/  

count n *** /ˈkaʊnt/  
customer n C *** /ˈkʌstəmər/  
delicious adj * /ˈdɛlɪʃəs/  
dish n C ** /dɪʃ/  
draw v *** /d𝑟əʊ/  
droppings n pl /ˈdrɒpɪŋz/  

(drug n C *** /d्रʊɡ/  
(drug n C *** /ˈdɹɪf/  

(face n C *** /fɑːs/  
(fascinating adj * /ˈfæsɪnətɪŋ/  
flavour n C * /ˈflɔːr/  
(fresh adj *** /friʃ/  
fridge n C * /frɪdʒ/  

(healthy adj ** /ˈheɪlθi/  

(heart n C *** /hɑːrt/  

(ingredient n C /ˈɪŋgrɪdʒənt/  

(kill v *** /kɪl/  

(laboratory n C * /ˈlæbərətri/  
leaf n C *** /leɪf/  

(lifestyle n C /ˈlaɪfست/  
(lively adj /ˈlaɪvli/  

(market n C ** /ˈmɑːkɪt/  
(marvellous adj /ˈmɑːvələs/  

(measure v *** /ˈmeʒər/  

(microwave n C/v /ˈmaɪkraʊwɔːt/  

(military service n U /ˈmɪlitəri ri ˈmiːvɪs/  

(movement n C *** /ˈmʌvmənt/  

(occasion n C *** /ˈəʊʃən/  

(order v *** /ˈɔrdr/  

(plant n C *** /ˈplant/  

(presenter n C /ˈprɛzntər/  

(preservation n C /ˈprɛzərvəʃən/  

(progress n U *** /ˈprəʊgrəs/  

(scoop n C /skɔːp/  

(serve v *** /sɜːv/  

(service n U *** /ˈsɜːvɪs/  

(shopping list n C /ˈʃɒpɪŋ lɪst/  

(silly adj * /ˈsɪli/  

(sparkling adj /ˈspɑːklin/  

(special adj *** /ˈspeʃl/  

(speciality n C /ˈspeʃələti/  

(supermarket n C * /ˈsʌpərmɑːkət/  

(taste n/v *** /ˈteɪst/  

(taxi n C *** /ˈteɪksi/  

(weak adj ** /ˈweɪk/  

(weigh v ** /ˈwaɪ/  


7A | Rising stars

**Speaking**

1. Read this description of a job. What is the job?

   I work for the government and I deal with everything! I work in a beautiful office in Washington. I work with lots of different people. It's very well-paid. It's also temporary. What do I do?

2. Think of another job and make three sentences about it. Work in pairs. Read your sentences to your partner. Your partner must guess the job.

**Vocabulary: work**

1. Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

   1. Many film stars had very different jobs / works before they started their acting careers / jobs.
   2. Madonna hated her career / work at a donut shop, but she needed a job / work.
   3. Brad Pitt had a career / job as a dancing chicken outside a restaurant before he began his career / job as an actor.
   4. Tom Cruise was thinking of a career / work in the church before finding job / work in the movies.

2. Complete the sentences in column A with a phrase from column B.

   **A**
   1. At the donut shop, Madonna was **in charge**
   2. She was **fired**
   3. Brad Pitt used to **work**
   4. When he was young, he was often **out**
   5. For a time, Tom Cruise **earned**
   6. He was **responsible**

   **B**
   a. of work.
   b. as a model.
   c. for cleaning the tables.
   d. from the job.
   e. of the coffee machine.
   f. a living in a New York restaurant.

3. Work in pairs. Talk about someone you know who:

   • is out of work.
   • does not need to earn a living.
   • has an interesting career.
   • has had lots of different jobs.
   • has a very responsible job.
   • loves/hates her/his work.

   *My sister is out of work. She lost her job when her company closed. She's finding it very difficult to get another job.*

**Listening**

1. **1.58** Listen to three people on a radio talk show. They are speaking about famous people they have met in their jobs. Match the speakers to the stars.

   1. Valerio    a. Brad Pitt
   2. Michelle   b. Tom Cruise
   3. Tony       c. Leonardo Di Caprio
d. Tom Hanks
e. Madonna
f. Jennifer Aniston

2. **1.58** Listen to the talk show again. Complete the sentences with Valerio (V), Michelle (M) or Tony (T).

   1. **V** cant remember a star's name.
   2. **M** comes from New Jersey.
   3. **T** is Australian.
   4. **V** lives in Santa Monica.
   5. **M** saw a star recently.
   6. **V** thought the stars were cute.
   7. **M** was interested in the star's girlfriend.
   8. **T** works as a customer service assistant.

3. Have you ever met anyone famous?
GRAMMAR: present perfect simple

We can use the present perfect simple to talk about our experiences. We often use it with ever and never.

Have you ever met anyone famous?
Yes, I’ve met Tiger Woods.
I’ve never visited England.

We use the present perfect simple to focus on the experience, not when or where it happened. If we want to give more details, we use the past simple.

I’ve met Tiger Woods.

2 Complete the dialogue. Put the verbs in brackets into the past simple or the present perfect simple.

A: ______ you ever ______ (hear) of Thomas Mapother IV?
B: No, I ______ (never / hear) of him. Who is he?
A: He’s an actor. He ______ (make) loads of famous films.
B: Well, I ______ (never / see) a film with him in it.
A: What about Mission Impossible? It was on TV last night. ______ you ______ (see) it?
B: Yes, but that ______ (be) with Tom Cruise.
A: Ah, but Thomas Mapother IV is Tom Cruise’s real name. He ______ (change) it before he got famous.

3 Work in pairs. Practise the dialogue.

4 Work in groups. Take it in turns to make questions using the prompts below. If the answer is yes, ask more questions to find out the details.

Have you ever driven a sports car?
What kind of car was it?

• drive / a sports car
• eat / in an expensive restaurant
• find / anything interesting in the street
• have / a temporary summer job
• live / in a different town
• lose / your job
• stay / in a five star hotel
• work / in an office
• win / a prize or a competition

5 Now tell the class about the people you spoke to.

Helen and John have both had a summer job, but Helen worked in a restaurant and John worked for his father.

PRONUNCIATION: /æ/ & /ʌ/

1 Underline any six words in the table below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>past simple /æ/</th>
<th>past participle /ʌ/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>began</td>
<td>begun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drank</td>
<td>drunk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ran</td>
<td>run</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sang</td>
<td>sung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swam</td>
<td>swum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 1.59 Now listen to the recording and tick (✓) the words you hear. When you hear the six words that you have underlined, say Bingo.

2 Work in pairs. Say a word from the table in exercise 1. Your partner must say if they hear a verb in the past simple or a past participle.
VOCABULARY & SPEAKING: verb collocations (work)

1. Put the sentences in the correct place in the diagram.
   a. You apply for a job.
   b. You finish your studies.
   c. You get promoted.
   d. You get the job.
   e. You go for an interview.
   f. You go on a training course.

```
1 You finish your studies.

2 ________________________________

3 ________________________________
You don't get an interview.

4 ________________________________
You don't get the job.

5 ________________________________

6 ________________________________
You get a pay rise.
```

2. Complete the text about Pat Side's experience of work with the verbs in the box.
   applied finished got (x2) had left
   lost was (x2) went (x2)

**Back to Work**

When Pat Side's children (1) finished their studies and (2) went home, Pat wanted to find a job. She (3) had no qualifications, so she (4) went on a training course to become an assistant in a home for retired people. After the course, she (5) applied for many different jobs. She (6) went for a few interviews, but it was six months before she (7) got a job. She (8) did good at her work and, two years later, she (9) was promoted to 'senior assistant'. She also (10) worked a small pay rise. Unfortunately, the home closed a year after that and Pat (11) lost her job.
Life on the Other Side

Earlier this year, successful journalist Pat Side was preparing an article about the problems of mothers who want to return to work. By chance, she met another woman who had the same name as her and was the same age. The other Pat Side was unemployed and looking for a job. The two women agreed to exchange lives for four weeks and to write about their experiences.

Day 2 (1) ______________

Day 4 Tomorrow, I’ve got interviews for four different jobs. The salaries are low – more or less the same as my unemployment benefit. But if I don’t apply for the jobs, I lose my benefit! It’s crazy!

Day 5 I didn’t get the jobs. They said I was too old. It’s the first time in my new life that I’ve wanted to cry.

Day 8 Back to the Jobcentre. I waited for three hours to speak to Mr Mills. They said he was in a meeting, but I think he was having a long lunch. He gave me two more application forms …

Day 12 I’ve never worried about money too much, but today I got two bills in the post. Gas and electricity. I haven’t got the money. What am I going to do?

Day 14 (2) ______________

Day 15 Another interview today. I didn’t have the money for the bus so I walked. Five miles in the cold and rain and I didn’t get the job. Chips again for dinner.

Day 16 (3) ______________

Day 18 I went for another interview today and took the bus. Surprise, surprise – I didn’t get the job. They said I was too qualified.

Day 29 I’ve filled in seventeen application forms and been to seven interviews, but no success. I begin to think this is all a waste of time.

Day 30 (4) ______________

Two weeks after this article was written, Pat Side found a job in a telephone call centre. She enjoys her new work and says that the money is good.

Speaking

1. Imagine that you can exchange your life with the life of someone else for four weeks. Make notes about a typical day in your new life.

2. Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about your new life.

Did you know?

1. Work in pairs. Look at the bar chart comparing different salaries in the United Kingdom and discuss these questions.
   - Do you think the differences in salary are fair?
   - How would you change the order?
   - What is a good salary in your country?
   - What are the best and worst paid jobs in your country?

Who has the best-paid job?

- doctor
- lawyer
- dentist
- engineer
- accountant
- police officer
- train driver
- computer programmer
- teacher
- social worker
- nurse
- waiter / waitress
- sales assistant
Job selection

Reading

1. How often do you read your horoscope? Do you believe what it says?
2. Read the magazine article and choose the best title.
   1. Horoscopes are a waste of time
   2. Why you should read your horoscope
   3. Astrology and the secret police

It’s 9 o’clock in the morning and you have already arrived at work. There are a million things to do: check your email, finish something you started yesterday, get ready for that meeting, tidy up your desk ... stop, hold it! Have you read your horoscope yet?

By the way, astrology is important. Millions and millions of people around the world actually believe in it. American residents, the secret police, national football managers and successful business people have all used horoscopes in their work. The great American banker, J P Morgan, once said, ‘Millionaires don’t use astrology. Billionaires do.’

Every time you write your date of birth on a form (to apply for a job or promotion, for example), somebody somewhere will probably look at the astrological information it contains. Does this person have the right personality for the job? Will they work well with the other people? How important is work in their life? Is this person a good traveller? How ambitious are they?

So even if you think that horoscopes are a waste of time, it’s interesting to know what other people are thinking about you. Oh, by the way, have you read your boss’s star sign yet?

The article was badly torn out of the magazine. What is the first word in each line of paragraphs 2 and 3?

Read the article again. Complete the sentences with words from the text.

1. Some people think that horoscopes are a ____________ of time.
2. Many different kinds of people ______________ in astrology.
3. People sometimes make ______________ in astrology.
4. People can get your astrological information when you fill in an ______________ form for a job.
5. They are interested in finding out about your ______________.

Grammar: present perfect simple with already & yet

We usually use already in positive sentences. We use it to emphasize that something has happened before now (perhaps earlier than expected).

It is early in the morning, but she has already arrived at work.

We use yet in negative sentences and questions. We use it to talk or ask about something that has not happened, but will probably happen soon.

Have you checked your email yet?
No, I haven’t done it yet.

1. Complete the dialogue with already or yet.
   A: Have you finished _____?
   B: No, not ___. Another few minutes, OK?
   A: But you’ve ___ taken two hours!
   B: I know, but I haven’t really understood the problem ___.
   A: I’ve ___ explained it to you twice!
   B: Just give me a few more minutes, OK?

2. Work in pairs. Practise the dialogue.

3. Work in pairs, A and B.
   A: Turn to page 131. Look at the Things to do list. Ask your partner questions.
   Have you ... yet?
   B: Turn to page 132. Look at the Things to do list. Answer your partner’s questions.
   Yes, I have. No, I haven’t. No, not yet.

4. Make sentences that are true for you using the prompts. For each sentence, give some extra information.

   1. I haven’t finished my studies yet. I’m going to take my final exams next year.
   2. finish my studies
   3. find the perfect job
   4. meet the perfect person
   5. travel to lots of different countries

70 |
VOCABULARY: adjectives & nouns (personality)

1. What star sign are you? Think of three people you know. What are their star signs?

Now read the star signs for you and for them. Do you agree with the information?

2. Complete the table with words from the horoscope.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>definition</th>
<th>adjective</th>
<th>noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>wants to be successful</td>
<td>(1)</td>
<td>ambition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shows strong feelings</td>
<td>(2)</td>
<td>emotion(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can create new ideas</td>
<td>(3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>does not need other people</td>
<td>(4)</td>
<td>independence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can understand things quickly</td>
<td>(5)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>does not mind waiting</td>
<td>(6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>has special abilities</td>
<td>(7)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can understand what other people are</td>
<td>(8)</td>
<td>sensitivity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feeling</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Speaking**

1. Work in groups. Discuss the jobs in the box. Decide which are the most important qualities people need to do these jobs and explain why. Use the words and phrases in the horoscope to help you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>lawyer</th>
<th>police officer</th>
<th>sales person</th>
<th>teacher</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Good police officers are calm people because they often have to deal with dangerous situations.

Now choose the best star sign for each job.

2. Imagine the perfect boss. Describe her/him in eight sentences.

The perfect boss ...

... has a lot of patience.

... gives you a bonus every year.

**ARIES 21/03 - 20/04**

When they stop thinking about themselves, they are excellent managers. Well-organized and with very good people skills, they need to learn a bit more patience.

**TAURUS 21/04 - 21/05**

Not the most imaginative people in the world, but they are the best people to have near you if you are looking for action. When they do things, they do them well.

**GEMINI 22/05 - 21/06**

Their independence is important to them and they work better on their own than in a team. Lots of imagination and ideas, but they get bored quickly.

**CANCER 22/06 - 23/07**

They seem calm and organized, but Cancers have a secret sensitivity. Look after them well, and they will look after you.

**LEO 24/07 - 23/08**

Strong, patient and skilled, Leos want to be boss - and they often are. They have great ambition, but be careful of them if they do not get what they want.

**VIRGO 24/08 - 23/09**

They often live for their work and they are not very emotional people. They learn quickly and do not need a lot of help. Calm, but sometimes too calm.

**LIBRA 24/09 - 23/10**

Librans are a happy balance of many opposites: imagination and hard work, patience and speed. They are liked by other people.

**SCORPIO 24/10 - 22/11**

Their main strength is their ability to change. With their natural intelligence, they understand situations quickly and know what to do next.

**SAGITTARIUS 23/11 - 21/12**

Honest and straightforward in the way they work, but when things don't go well, they can get worried. Patient and kind with other people.

**CAPRICORN 22/12 - 20/01**

Naturally skilled managers, they are independent and strong. They are more sensitive than they seem and they are good listeners.

**AQUARIUS 21/01 - 19/02**

They like their work and they enjoy working with other people. They do not usually show their emotions. Quite ambitious, but they make good friends.

**PIRCE 20/02 - 20/03**

Intelligent and imaginative, they have good people skills, but they find it difficult to make important decisions.
**7D | The recruitment agency**

**Speaking**

1. Work in pairs. Discuss these questions.
   - What's the best way to find a job? Make a list. (For example, go to a recruitment agency)
   - Is it easy or difficult to find work in your town?

**Vocabulary: curriculum vitae**

1. Look at extracts 1–6 from a CV (curriculum vitae). Match them to the highlighted words or phrases in the recruitment agency advertisement.

1. Mr R. Dailly (college tutor), Doncaster University, Box 478B, Doncaster
2. Mrs Mary Whitehead (General Manager), Socks Are Us, High Street, Halifax

2. 2002 – 2004 Socks Are Us, Halifax (Manager)
3. 2000 – 2001 CD Heaven, Halifax (Assistant Manager)
4. Alison Peabody
   - **Date of birth:** 4th March 1978
   - **Address:** 39d, Victoria Road, Halbridge
   - **Tel:** 0719 976488
   - **Email:** ali.peabody@quickmail.com
5. 1999–2000 University of Doncaster
6. Cinema, travel, tennis, eating out

2. Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions using the words and phrases in the advertisement.

   *Could you tell me about your education?*
   *What qualifications have you got?*

---

**Can’t find a job?**
**Want to find a new job?**
**Looking for a better job?**
**Not sure what to do?**

**Sayers Recruitment & Training can help!**

Send us a short letter/CV with your personal details and information about your education, qualifications, professional experience and personal interests. Include the names of two referees. We can find the right job for you! Speak to one of our experienced career advisers.

For more information, visit our website www.sayers-rt.com or send your CV to davinasayers@srt.net

---

**Listening**

1. **2.2** Listen to a conversation in the SRT recruitment agency. **Underline** the correct information in the notes below.

---

**Name:** Miss / Ms Ruby Tuesday
**Qualifications:** none / MA Philosophy
**Interests:** computers / cooking
**Ideal job:** selling hamburgers / she doesn't know!
2 2.2 Listen to the conversation again. Tick (✓) the advice that Davina gives to Ruby.
1 Write a longer CV.
2 Study philosophy.
3 Get a qualification.
4 Improve your appearance.
5 Buy a smart suit.
6 Buy some fashionable earrings.
7 Have a haircut.
8 Arrive for interviews on time.

3 Do you agree with Davina's advice? What would you say to Ruby?

FUNCTIONAL LANGUAGE: advice

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Asking for advice</th>
<th>Giving advice</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>What should I do?</td>
<td>You should/shouldn't + infinitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Should I + infinitive?</td>
<td>I (don't) think you should + infinitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(If I were you.) I'd + infinitive</td>
<td>Why don't you + infinitive ... ?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What about + verb + -ing ... ?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Rearrange the words to make questions and sentences that give/ask for advice.
1 go I I or should should stay ?
2 decide quickly shouldn't too you
3 about don't it think why you ?
4 ask friends I should think you your .
5 a get if I I'd job new were you
6 a about agency going recruitment to what ?

2 Work in pairs. A friend of yours has some problems at work. Give your friend some advice.
1 Why don’t you write him a letter?
   I think you should speak to his boss!
1 My boss never listens to my ideas.
2 I've got a new job and no one talks to me in the office.
3 I want to take a day off next Friday and I don’t want to tell my boss.
4 My boss was angry with me because I was late for the third time this week.
5 I've got too much work to do and I'm feeling really stressed.

Roleplay
3 You are going to ask for some careers advice. Think about your answers to these questions. Make notes if necessary.
• What do you do now?
• What other jobs have you had?
• What qualifications do you have?
• What are you good at? (organizing, working with people, etc)
• What are you interested in? (music, sport, etc)
• What is important for you in a job? (money, travel, working regular hours, etc)
• What kind of job would you most like to do?

4 Work in pairs. Take it in turns to interview each other, using the questions in exercise 3. Give your partner some careers advice.

PRONUNCIATION: email & website addresses

1 2.3 Listen to the email and website addresses.

davina@sayers.co.uk
www.sayers-rt.com
www.sayers-rt.org/index.html
davinasayers@srt.net

2 Work in pairs, A and B.
A: Turn to page 129.
B: Turn to page 131.
Dictate the addresses to your partner.

3 Write four more email or website addresses and dictate them to your partner.
GRAMMAR

Present perfect simple 1

We use the present perfect simple to talk about general or personal experiences.

*I have had* many different jobs.

We do not usually refer to a specific time when we use the present perfect simple. We only know that the action (or actions) happened before now.

*I have visited* many countries. (= in my life)

We use the past simple when we refer to a specific time.

*I worked* as a waitress last summer.

We make the present perfect simple with *have/has* + past participle.

### Affirmative & Negative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1</th>
<th>he/she/it</th>
<th>you/we/they</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Affirmative</td>
<td><em>ve</em></td>
<td><em>s</em></td>
<td><em>ve</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>haven’t</td>
<td>hasn’t</td>
<td>haven’t</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Question

Where have I worked abroad?

Have you worked abroad? Yes, I have. / No, I haven’t.

Has he worked abroad? Yes, he has. / No, he hasn’t.

We use *ever* in questions when we want to ask about a person’s life up to the present time.

*Have you ever worked* in a restaurant?

(= at any time in your life?)

**Already & yet**

We can use the present perfect simple with *already* and *yet*.

We use *already* in positive sentences and we usually put it before the past participle. We use *already* with completed actions that happen before now or sooner than expected.

I’ve *already* found a job.

She’s *already* finished her studies.

We use *yet* in questions and negative sentences and we put it at the end of the sentence. We use *yet* to ask if an action is complete or to say that it is not complete. We use it when we think the action will happen soon.

*Have you read your horoscope yet?*

I haven’t checked the mailbox yet.

See page 104 for more information about the present perfect simple.

FUNCTIONAL LANGUAGE

Asking for advice

*What should I do?*

*Should I + infinitive?*

Giving advice

You *should* + infinitive ...

You *shouldn’t* + infinitive ...

I (don’t) think you *should* + infinitive ...

(If I were you,) I’d (wouldn’t) + infinitive ...

Why don’t you + infinitive?

What about + verb + -ing?
## Word List

### Work

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>boss n C **</td>
<td>/bɒs/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>application form n C</td>
<td>/ɪˈplɪkeɪʃn fɔrəm/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apply for v ***</td>
<td>/əˈplaɪ fɜːr/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be fired (from a job)</td>
<td>/bɪˈfaːrd/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>career n C **</td>
<td>/ˈkɑːrɪər/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CV (curriculum vitae)</td>
<td>/dɪˈpləʊmə/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do (sth) for a living</td>
<td>/də fɔː ˈlɪvɪŋ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>earn v **</td>
<td>/ɜːrn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>education n U ***</td>
<td>/ɪˈdʒuəkʃən/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in charge (of sth/sb)</td>
<td>/ɪn tʃeɪndʒ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interview n C **</td>
<td>/ɪntəˈvjuː/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>job n C ***</td>
<td>/dʒɒb/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>office n C ***</td>
<td>/ˈɒfɪs/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay rise n C</td>
<td>/peɪ rɛz/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>professional adj ***</td>
<td>/ˌprəfəˈrəʊʃən/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(be/get) promoted</td>
<td>/proˌməʊtɪd/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>promotion n C/U *</td>
<td>/prəˌməʊʃən/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qualification n C *</td>
<td>/kwəˈlɪfɪkəʃən/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>recruitment n U</td>
<td>/rɪkrəˈtʃən/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>referee n C</td>
<td>/rɪˈfɛruː/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>responsible (for sth)</td>
<td>/rɪˈspɒnsəbl/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retired adj</td>
<td>/rɪˈtɑːrd/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>salary n C *</td>
<td>/ˈsæləri/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>temporary adj ***</td>
<td>/ˈtɛmprərəri/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>training n U ***</td>
<td>/ˈtreɪnɪŋ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>well-paid adj</td>
<td>/welˈpeɪd/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Jobs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>accountant n C</td>
<td>/əˈkɒuntənt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chauffeur n C</td>
<td>/ʃəʊˈfɜːr/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>computer</td>
<td>/ˈkʌmpətər/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>programmer n C</td>
<td>/prəˈgræmər/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dentist n C</td>
<td>/ˈdɛnstɪst/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doctor n C ***</td>
<td>/ˈdɒktər/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>engineer n C *</td>
<td>/ˌɪndʒɪˈnɪər/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>journalist n C **</td>
<td>/ˌdʒʊəˈrɪstə/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lawyer n C **</td>
<td>/ˈleɪwər/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>manager n C **</td>
<td>/ˈmænɪdʒər/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nurse n C **</td>
<td>/nɜːs/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>police officer n C</td>
<td>/pəˈliːs ˈɒfɪs/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sales assistant n C</td>
<td>/sɛlz əˈsɪstənt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>social worker n C</td>
<td>/səˈwɜːrkə wɜːkə/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teacher n C ***</td>
<td>/ˈtiːtʃər/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>train driver n C</td>
<td>/tren dreaˈvaɪr/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>waiter n C</td>
<td>/weɪtər/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>waitress n C</td>
<td>/weɪtər/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Personality

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ambition n C/U *</td>
<td>/əˈmbɜːrɪʃn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ambitious adj</td>
<td>/əˈmbɜːrəs/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>emotion n C/U **</td>
<td>/əˈməʊʃən/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>emotional adj **</td>
<td>/əˈməʊʃən/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>honest adj *</td>
<td>/ˈɒnɪst/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imagination n U *</td>
<td>/ɪˌmæɡɪnəˈeɪʃn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imaginative adj</td>
<td>/ɪˌmæɡɪnəˈeɪʃn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>independence n U **</td>
<td>/ɪndɪˈpɜːrsənə(ʊ)l/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>independent adj ***</td>
<td>/ɪndɪˈpɜːrsənə(ʊ)l/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(well) organized adj</td>
<td>/ˈɔːnəzɪˌɔrdɪd/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>patience n U *</td>
<td>/ˈpeɪtn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>patient adj</td>
<td>/ˈpeɪtn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sensitive adj</td>
<td>/ˈsɛnsɪtɪv/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sensitivity n U</td>
<td>/sɛnsɪˈtɪvɪtɪ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skill n C/U ***</td>
<td>/skɪl/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skilled adj</td>
<td>/ˈskɪld/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Other words & phrases

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ability n C/U ***</td>
<td>/əˈbɪlɪtɪ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adviser n C *</td>
<td>/əˈvaɪzə/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>angry adj ***</td>
<td>/ˈæŋɡrɪ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>appearance n U ***</td>
<td>/əˈpærəns/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>assistant adj/n C **</td>
<td>/əˈsɪstənt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>astrology n U</td>
<td>/əˈstərələdʒɪ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>balance n U **</td>
<td>/ˈbæləns/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>basic adj ***</td>
<td>/ˈbæsɪk/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>billionaire n C</td>
<td>/bɪlˈjərɪə/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>by chance</td>
<td>/baɪ tʃæns/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cash v</td>
<td>/keɪʃ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>celebrity n C *</td>
<td>/seˈlebrəti/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cheque n C *</td>
<td>/tʃek/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contain v ***</td>
<td>/kənˈteɪn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crazy adj **</td>
<td>/ˈkreɪzi/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cute adj</td>
<td>/kjuːt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dot n C</td>
<td>/dɔt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>downtown adj/adv</td>
<td>/dəˈtaʊntaʊn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>earring n C</td>
<td>/ˈɛrɪŋ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gas n C/U ***</td>
<td>/ɡæs/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haircut n C</td>
<td>/ˈhɛərʌɪt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>horoscope n C</td>
<td>/həˈrɒskəʊp/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hyphen n C</td>
<td>/ˈhæfɪn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loads of</td>
<td>/ləʊz ʌv/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>marketing n U</td>
<td>/mɑːkɪtɪŋ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mile n C ***</td>
<td>/miːl/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>millionaire n C</td>
<td>/mɪləˈmænə/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>movies n pl</td>
<td>/ˈmɪvɪz/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>natural adj ***</td>
<td>/ˈnætʃrəˈeɪl/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>naturally adv *</td>
<td>/ˈnætʃrəˈeɪli/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>philosophy n U *</td>
<td>/ˈfɪləˈsɒfɪ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>post office n C</td>
<td>/pəʊst ˈɒfɪs/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>recently adv ***</td>
<td>/rɪˈsɛntli/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sales n pl</td>
<td>/sɛlz/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>situation n C ***</td>
<td>/sɪˈteɪʃn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slash n C</td>
<td>/slɑːʃ/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**The futurological conference**

**Speaking**

1. Work in pairs. Discuss these questions.
   - What are the films in the box called in your language?
   - What science fiction films have you seen?
   - What happens in them?

   In Independence Day, aliens come to Earth and the President saves the world.

**Reading**

1. You are going to read about a futurological conference.
   (Futurology is the study of the future.)

   Look at the titles for the talks. Three of the titles do not come from this conference. Put a cross (X) by these three titles.

   a. An exciting new theory of time travel
   b. Armstrong – the first man on the moon
   c. The world is growing older
   d. Life in front of the computer screen
   e. Salyut and Mir – early space stations
   f. Prisons in space
   g. Star wars: fact or fiction?
   h. The advantages of new energy sources
   i. The end of English lessons?
   j. The invention of the laser

   ______________ ______________ ______________

   Dr Judith Amos (author of Clean New World)
   It might not be long before the sun, the wind and the sea become our main sources of energy. We will live in a cleaner, healthier world. Will it be a safer one, too?

   Professor J B Gartenberg (University of London)
   Research scientists will find cures for most of the world’s diseases in the next 50 years. We will all live longer and, by the year 2020, there will be more than one billion people over 60 years old. How will this change our society and how will we pay for the elderly?

   Randy Oakes (Journalist)
   The 21st century is the age of the internet. More and more, people are using the internet for business, education, shopping and even to make friends. This talk will explore how internet use will increase in the next 20 years.

   Duncan Hague (Institute of Sociology)
   In the US and the UK, prisons are almost full and crime is increasing every day. Soon, there won’t be enough room for all our prisoners. Where will we put them? Space stations may be the answer.

   Dr Mikhail Radvanyi (Lingua Foundation)
   Learning a foreign language may soon be a thing of the past. This talk will look at new developments in automatic translation machines.

   Xavier M Berman (author of Light Years Away)
   A hundred years ago many scientists said that space travel was impossible. Now they say that we will never be able to travel in time. ‘Super string’ theory suggests that they might be wrong.

   Stella May Roche (War on War)
   American military scientists are developing new laser technology that may change the world for ever. Laser guns on military satellites will be unstoppable and the future for the smaller countries of the world is extremely frightening.
1. Correct the mistakes in the sentences.
1. I think that our teacher will give us a test next week.
2. I may be go to America soon.
3. I may not to get married.
4. I think my country might wins the next World Cup.
5. I'll always remembering the people in this class.
6. I think that it will rains tomorrow.
7. I'll never living in another country.
8. I won't to become rich or famous.

2. Change the sentences in exercise 1 so that they are true for you.

3. How will life be different for you/your family:
   - in one year’s time?
   - in ten years’ time?

Work in pairs. Talk about the topics in the box.

appearance home money work

PRONUNCIATION: contractions 2

1. 2.4 Listen to these contractions and repeat.
   I’ll it’ll there’ll we’ll what’ll you’ll

2. Match a phrase in column A with a response in column B.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aren’t you ready yet? Hurry up!</td>
<td>a I’ll be OK.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Be careful – it’s very dangerous.</td>
<td>b I won’t be long.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I wonder where they are.</td>
<td>c You’ll like it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Let’s have a drink before the film starts.</td>
<td>d We’ll be late.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What’s this? I’ve never eaten that before.</td>
<td>e They’ll be here soon.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. 2.5 Listen to the recording to check your answers.


GRAMMAR: predictions 1 (may, might & will)

We can use will/won’t + infinitive to talk about things we are sure will happen in the future.
There will be more than 1 billion people over 60 years old.
We won’t be able to travel in time.

We can use may/might + infinitive when we are less sure things will happen in the future.
The world may become more dangerous.
Scientists might find life on other planets.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sure</th>
<th>not sure</th>
<th>sure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>will</td>
<td>may/might</td>
<td>won’t</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Language Reference page 84

SPEAKING

1. 2.6–2.9 Listen to four people speaking. Match the speakers 1–4 to the topics a–j below.

   The future of:
   a. computers  f. medicine
   b. crime       g. my country
   c. education  h. restaurants
   d. holidays    i. shops
   e. languages  j. space travel

2. Choose a topic from the list. You must talk about the topic for thirty seconds without stopping. Before you speak, spend some time preparing what you are going to say.
Space tourists

LISTENING

1 You are going to listen to a radio programme.
   All the words in the box appear in the programme.
   What do you think it is about?

   blast off  contestant  game show
   museum   rocket        tourist

2 2.10 Now listen to check your answers.

3 2.10 Listen again and answer the questions.
1 How many space tourists have there been?
2 How much did they pay to go into space?
3 Who is organizing the new game show?
4 What countries will the contestants come from?
5 Where will the game show be filmed?
6 What is the prize?
7 Will the winner visit the International Space Station?
8 Who thinks that space tourism is too dangerous?
9 Would you like to go into space? Why or why not?

VOCABULARY: compound nouns with numbers

1 Look at tapescript 2.10 on page 141 and find these phrases. Which phrase is correct?
1 20-million dollar cheque / 20-million dollars cheque
2 thirteen-part show / thirteen-parts show
3 eight-day trip / eight-days trip

2 Match the words from column A with the words from column B to complete the sentences.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>eight-hour</td>
<td>break</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>five-star</td>
<td>course</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>million-dollar</td>
<td>day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ten-minute</td>
<td>hotel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20-euro</td>
<td>house</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>two-week</td>
<td>note</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 He went to England for a ____ in business English.
2 Have you got change for a ____?
3 I've never stayed in a ____.
4 Let's stop for a ____ and a cup of coffee.
5 I usually work an ____ but sometimes I do more.
6 She lives in a ____ in the Hollywood Hills.
GRAMMAR: predictions 2 (maybe, probably, certainly, etc)

We can use words like possibly and perhaps to make our predictions sound more or less probable.

100%

maybe probably certainly definitely

possibly

We usually put maybe and perhaps at the beginning of the sentence.

Perhaps a pop star will be the next space tourist.

Possibly, probably, certainly and definitely come after will in positive sentences and before won't in negative sentences.

The contestants will certainly need to be very fit.
The winner possibly won't visit the space station.

SEE LANGUAGE REFERENCE PAGE 84

1 Put the words in brackets into the correct place in the sentences.
1 We won't discover life on other planets. (probably)
2 China will be the first country to land a person on Mars. (possibly)
3 Ordinary people won't be able to travel in space for a very long time. (definitely)
4 There will be hotels in space in the next twenty years. (perhaps)
5 Engineers will build factories in space. (certainly)
6 We will stop spending money on space exploration. (maybe)

Do you agree with the sentences above?

2 Choose one of the questions below for a class survey. Ask the other students in the class what they think. Use the words in the box in your answers.

definitely probably possibly definitely not

1 Will you ever speak very good English?
2 Will you ever be in trouble with the police?
3 Will you lose your teeth or your hair?
4 Will you have more than five children?
5 Will you live to be 100?

3 Tell the rest of the class the results of your survey in exercise 2.

SPEAKING

1 Think of someone you know who would be a good contestant for Star Quest. Why would they be good? Make notes about the following:

- their personality
- their practical skills
- their appearance and health
- other reasons

2 Work in groups. Take it in turns to describe your person. Then decide as a group who is the best person to go on the game show.

PRONUNCIATION: word stress 2

1 Underline the word in each group that has a different stress pattern.

1 certainly energy probably unhappy
2 businessman engineer president scientist
3 dangerous internet invention satellite
4 advantage computer conference contestant
5 equipment exciting possible remember

2 2.11 Listen to the recording to check your answers.
8c | Help!

**Speaking**

1. Work in pairs. Ask and answer these questions.
   - Do you have a computer at home?
   - What do you use it for?
   - Are you connected to the internet?
   - How often do you use the internet?
   - What do you do online?

**Vocabulary: computer actions**

1. Label the computer icons A–L with words from the box.

![Diagram of computer icons with labels A–L]

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>K</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Listening**

1. **2.12** Listen to a conversation between Mademoiselle Lajolie and Bella. Answer the questions.
   - What does Mademoiselle Lajolie want to do?
   - Why?

2. **2.12** Listen to the conversation again and put the instructions for sending an email in the correct order.

- Attach your document to the message.
- Click on the email icon.
- Connect to the internet.
- Click on ‘Write Mail’.
- Log off.
- Send the message.
- Type the address.
- Write your message.

3. Is the order of the instructions the same for your computer? If not, how is it different?
FUNCTIONAL LANGUAGE: giving instructions

1. Look at tape script 2.12 on page 141. Underline all the instructions and sequencing adverbs.

2. Put the instructions in the correct order.

Checking your English spelling

☐ add it to the languages on the right. You will now
☐ and find ‘Tools’. Then, select
☐ be able to use the spell check programme in
☐ English on your computer.
☐ First of all, you click on ‘Start’ at the bottom of your
☐ ‘Language Settings’. Finally, find ‘English’ and
☐ screen. After that, you click on the ‘Programmes’ arrow

3. Work in pairs. A friend is writing an essay and wants to find a different word for world. Look at the pictures and give her/him instructions.

Did you know?

1. Read the information about computer games in the US. Do you think the facts are the same or different for your country?

- Half of all Americans over the age of six play computer games.
- More than half of these people are over eighteen. The average age is 29.
- 60% are men and 40% are women.
- Every year, Americans buy more than 200 million computer games.
- Some people play games on their own but more than 60% play with their friends.

2. Work in pairs. Ask and answer these questions.
- What are the most popular computer games in your country?
- Have you ever played any computer games? Which ones? How do the games work?

---

The **world** is growing older

1. First of all, highlight the word that you want to change.

2. The world is growing older

3. Format | Tools | Table

   Spelling and Grammar ...

   Language | Word Count ...

4. Spelling and Grammar ...

   Language

   Word Count ...

5. Thesaurus: English (UK)

   Looked up: world

   Replace with synonym: planet

   Meanings:
   - earth (n)
   - planet
   - globe

   Replace | Look up | Previous | Cancel

---

1. Help! | 8c
LISTENING & SPEAKING

1 Listen to the recording and match the descriptions 1–5 to the gadgets A–E opposite.

2 Work in pairs. Discuss these questions.
   • Which of these gadgets would you like to buy? For who?
   • Which of these will sell the most?
   Put the gadgets in order (1 = best seller → 5 = worst seller).

READING

A Great Idea?

Ash Sharma, a second-year Business Studies student at Thames Valley University, thinks he has found a good way to make money. He needs £5,000 to get his idea off the ground, but his father has refused to help. What do you think? Read both sides of the story and decide for yourself.

My idea is very simple, really. I already have a small website called businessessays.com. Business students at university log on to the site and download essays. They have an essay to write for homework, for example, but they need some help with it. On the site, they find the essay they need, download it. At the moment, the site is free but if I can improve it, that will change.

I want to make the site much bigger and my idea is to make it really international. I have found some software that can translate the essays into sixteen different languages. It will be easy to use for people from all around the world.

I need about two months to do all the programming. When everything is ready, people will pay $2.99 a month to use my service. If it’s successful, I will be able to sell advertising, too.

Of course, I can’t continue with my university studies and set up the site at the same time. And if I wait, someone else will take my idea.

I would like to help my son, but my wife and I agree that it is not a good idea to lend him £5,000 now. There are two main reasons for our decision. My son has an interesting idea. Will his idea work? At the moment, it’s impossible to say. Are there any other websites that offer a similar service? How successful are these other sites? How many customers will he need before he starts to make money? If the site is successful, will he need to employ other people? How many? How much will he pay his staff? And finally – is it legal to help students with their homework? When he has a business plan and when he has the answers to these questions, I will think again.

We also think that it is important for our son to finish his university studies before he starts this website. If he leaves now, it will be too risky. What will happen to him if his idea doesn’t work? He will find himself with no job and no qualification, he will find it is difficult to get a good job. There are some things in life that we must wait for. After he finishes his studies, we will talk about his idea again.
1 Read the magazine article and answer the questions.
1 How does Ash think that he can make money?
2 Why does Ash want to leave university?
3 Why doesn’t Ash’s father want to help him?

2 Read the article again and put the phrases a–h into the gaps 1–8.

a and Ash is still very young
b and I need money to buy the software
c and if he does not have a qualification
d and it is very successful
e and it will be too late
f and use it for their work
g and who will look after the finances
h but he does not have a business plan

3 Work in pairs. Discuss these questions.
* Is the website a good idea?
* Is Ash’s father right to refuse to lend him the money?
* Is it wrong to download essays from the internet?

**VOCABULARY:** adjectives with infinitives

1 Complete these sentences with an infinitive from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>to finish</th>
<th>to get</th>
<th>to help</th>
<th>to say</th>
<th>to use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
1 It will be easy _____ the new website.
2 It is impossible _____ if Ash’s idea will work.
3 Is it legal _____ students with their homework?
4 It’s important for my son _____ his studies.
5 It’s difficult _____ a good job without a qualification.

Look at the article again to check your answers.

2 How many different sentences can you make from the table?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>It will be used to be</th>
<th>easy</th>
<th>possible</th>
<th>usual</th>
<th>legal</th>
<th>dangerous</th>
<th>healthy</th>
<th>difficult</th>
<th>impossible</th>
<th>unusual</th>
<th>illegal</th>
<th>safe</th>
<th>unhealthy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>is</td>
<td>to be</td>
<td>to drink</td>
<td>to find</td>
<td>to have</td>
<td>to meet</td>
<td>to see</td>
<td>to begin</td>
<td>to eat</td>
<td>to get</td>
<td>to make</td>
<td>to say</td>
<td>to stop</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**GRAMMAR:** present tense in future time clauses

When we are talking about future time in clauses with if, when, after and before, we use the present tense. We can use will in the main clause of the sentence.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>subsidiary clause</th>
<th>main clause</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>If it’s successful,</td>
<td>I will be able to sell advertising.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When everything is ready,</td>
<td>people will pay $2.99.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>After he finishes his studies,</td>
<td>we will talk about his idea again.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The subsidiary clause can also come after the main clause.

1 will be able to sell advertising if it’s successful.

See Language Reference Page 84

1 Complete the text. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense. Use will or present simple.

A modelling agency has offered a job in Japan to a sixteen-year-old English school student, Emily. She has decided to take the job. ‘If I ______ (not take) the job, I ______ (not get) the chance again,’ she said. Before she ______ (go), she ______ (have) a big party for all her friends. ‘I’m so excited,’ she said. ‘When I ______ (say) goodbye to my boyfriend at the airport, I ______ (be) very sad. But after I ______ (arrive) in Japan, everything ______ (be) OK.’ If she ______ (be) successful, the agency ______ (give) her more work. ‘I’ve never done this before,’ she said, ‘but I’m sure I ______ (be) good at it when I ______ (have) a little experience.’

2 Emily’s boyfriend does not want her to go. He thinks she will have problems. Make sentences from the prompts.

1 When she arrives, she won’t speak the language.
2 When / arrive / not speak the language
3 If / not speak the language / not make friends
4 If / feel very lonely / want to come home
5 When / come home / not have any qualifications

3 Can you think of any other possible problems that Emily will have? Make sentences with if, when, before or after.

4 Complete the sentences so that they are true for you.

1 If I don’t go out this weekend, I ______.
2 I ______ when I have enough money.
3 After I leave the school today, I ______.
4 I ______ before I am 65.
GRAMMAR

Predictions

Modal verbs (may, might & will)
We can use will + infinitive to talk about things we are sure will happen in the future.

Most people will live in cities, not in the country.
I will never be famous.
We won’t win the match next weekend.

We can also begin the sentence with I think/don’t think/hope(expect.

I think (that) they will get married.

We can use may/might + infinitive when we are less sure that things will happen in the future.

Scientists may find a cure for cancer.
I might go to New Zealand for my holidays.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sure</th>
<th>not sure</th>
<th>sure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>will</td>
<td>may/might</td>
<td>won’t</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Adverbs (maybe, probably, certainly, etc)
We can use adverbs like perhaps and probably to make our predictions sound more or less certain.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>100%</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>maybe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perhaps</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We usually put maybe and perhaps at the beginning of the sentence.

Perhaps you’ll pass all your exams and become a doctor.

We put possibly, probably, certainly and definitely after will in positive sentences and before won’t in negative sentences.

I will probably pass my exams.
The winner certainly won’t need to work again.

Present tense in future time clauses

All sentences have a main clause. We can use will + infinitive to talk about future time in a main clause.

Sometimes, we also need a subsidiary clause to give information about the time of an action. These clauses can begin with if, when, after and before. When we want to talk about future time in the subsidiary clause, we use a present tense. We do not use will in these subsidiary clauses.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>subsidiary clause</th>
<th>main clause</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>When he has a business plan,</td>
<td>his parents will think again.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>After he improves the site,</td>
<td>people will pay for the service.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If his idea doesn’t work,</td>
<td>what will happen to him?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We usually separate the two clauses with a comma.

We can also put the subsidiary clause after the main clause. In this case, we do not usually separate the two clauses with a comma.

What will happen to him if his idea doesn’t work?

FUNCTIONAL LANGUAGE

Giving instructions

We can give instructions with you + present simple.

You highlight the word, then you click the spell check icon.

We can also use the imperative form.

Save your work before you log off.

Don’t press that button!

We can make the order of the instructions easier to understand with sequencing adverbs.

First, …
First of all, …
Then, …
Next, …
After that, …
Afterwards, …
Finally, …

First of all, find the document you want. Then attach it to the email. Finally, press ‘send’.


WORD LIST

Compound nouns with numbers

When we make compound nouns that include numbers, the middle noun is singular.
20-million dollar /twenti 'miljan dolar/
cheque /'kεrke/
thirteen-part show /'θriti:n 'pɑrt shoʊ/
eight-day trip /'eɪt 'deɪ triːp/

Computer actions

arrow n C /æərəʊ/
attach v /ətʃɪk/
button n C /ˈbʌtən/
click n C v /kliːk/
connect v /kə'nekt/
copy v /ˈkoʊpi/ /kɔːsi/
cursor n C /ˈkɜːsər/
delete v /dɪˈliːt/

Adjectives with infinitives

What's on

SPEAKING & LISTENING

1. Look at the events below. Think of one person you know who would like to go to each event.

Work in pairs. Tell your partner about the people you have thought of. What other things do these people like doing?

2. Listen to part of a radio programme. Put the events in exercise 1 in the order that they are mentioned.

- The Moscow State Circus
- Camille Pissarro in London
- Dance Crazy
- Verdi's Requiem
- Mega DJ Battle
- Fame – the Musical
- Robbie Williams

3. Listen to the programme again. The reporter makes eight mistakes. Underline the information in the events that is different from the information on the programme.

4. Match the events in column A with the adjectives that the reporter uses in column B.

A
1. The Moscow State Circus
2. Camille Pissarro in London
3. Dance Crazy
4. Verdi's Requiem
5. Mega DJ Battle
6. Fame – the Musical
7. Robbie Williams

B
- cool
- depressing
- enjoyable
- exciting
- fantastic
- fascinating
- fun

5. Look at tapescript 2.18 on page 142 to check your answers. Do you agree with the reporter's adjectives?

6. Work in pairs. Imagine you are in London. Ask and answer these questions.

- Which of these events would you like to go to?
- What other things would you like to do in London?
- What kinds of entertainment are available in your town?
- What is on at the moment?
**VOCABULARY: -ing & -ed adjectives**

1. In the sentences below, which adjective describes how the speaker feels? Which adjective describes the thing that makes her/him feel this way?
   1. I think that kind of music is really relaxing.
   2. That kind of music makes me really relaxed.

2. Complete the dialogues with the correct word.
      B: Robbie Williams? I think his music is old-fashioned and boring / bored.
   2. A: I’m really tiring / tired. I didn’t get home until three o’clock this morning.
      B: I know. And it was extremely annoying / annoyed that you came home singing!
   3. A: I think this music is really relaxing / relaxed.
      B: Really? It makes me feel depressing / depressed.
   4. A: The concert was a bit disappointing / disappointed, wasn’t it?
      B: Yes, I was surprising / surprised. Celine Dion is usually so good.

3. 2.19 Listen to the recording to check your answers. Work in pairs and practise the dialogues.

4. Complete the sentences so that they are true for you.
   1. I find … quite frightening.
   2. I sometimes feel depressed when …
   3. I think that … is/are really fascinating.
   4. … is the most boring place in the world.
   5. I usually feel relaxed when …
   6. I was disappointed when …

**PRONUNCIATION: diphthongs**

1. Put the words in the box in the correct place in the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>don’t</th>
<th>down</th>
<th>fame</th>
<th>find</th>
<th>go</th>
<th>home</th>
<th>house</th>
<th>kind</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>most</td>
<td>out</td>
<td>place</td>
<td>quite</td>
<td>show</td>
<td>sound</td>
<td>Spain</td>
<td>state</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stay</td>
<td>time</td>
<td>town</td>
<td>twice</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>night</th>
<th>know</th>
<th>now</th>
<th>name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/au/</td>
<td>/ao/</td>
<td>/ao/</td>
<td>/ei/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>don’t</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/dant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. 2.20 Listen to the recording to check your answers.

3. Think of two other words for each column.

**DID YOU KNOW?**

1. When people in Britain go out, what do they do? Here is a list, in order, of the most popular activities.

   1. going to a pub
   2. going for a meal in a restaurant
   3. going to a library
   4. going to the cinema
   5. visiting a historic building
   6. going to a disco or nightclub
   7. going to a museum or art gallery

2. Work in pairs. Discuss these questions.
   • What are the favourite leisure activities of people in your country?
   • What about you? What do you like doing?
   • Are you typical of the people in your country?
9B | Reality TV

VOCABULARY: TV programmes
1 Match the types of TV programmes in the box to a programme description.

chat show current affairs programme
documentary game show sitcom
soap opera sports programme

READING
1 Read the article below. Match the paragraphs 1–3 to the descriptions a–e. There are two descriptions that you do not need.

a Why people like reality TV
d Making money from reality TV
b The beginnings of reality TV
e Problems with reality TV
c The end of reality TV

1 The first reality TV show in the world was called Expedition Robinson and it was shown in Sweden in 1997. Half the population of the country watched the final episode and a new kind of TV programme was born. Two years later in Holland, the first series of Big Brother was filmed. Again, it was a fantastic success and the final programme was watched by 15 million people. There are now more than 20 countries around the world which have Big Brother or Survivor (Expedition Robinson) on their TV screens. The ordinary people who take part in the programmes are known by millions of people in their own countries and reality TV has become big, big business.

2 For the TV producers, reality TV is a dream come true because many of the programmes cost nothing to make. At some point, the television viewers are asked to telephone the programme – to vote or to apply to take part in the show. It is the cost of these telephone calls that pays for the shows. One of the most popular shows is Pop Idol (the programme is called different things in different countries). In the show, a group of attractive young people are made into pop stars. TV viewers vote for their favourite person on the show. The winner makes a record, his or her pictures are published on the covers of magazines, millions of copies of the record are sold and then ... they are quickly forgotten.

3 But not everyone is happy about reality TV. In Portugal, two TV channels got into trouble because they showed too much of the private lives of the people in the shows. In France, reality TV is called ‘rubbish TV’ and the studios of Loft Story (Big Brother) were attacked three times in one week. In Greece, Big Brother was described as ‘an insult to human rights and civilization’. But despite the problems, reality TV continues to do well in most countries and it will be here for some time to come.

2 Describe examples of the different kinds of TV programmes in your country.
3 Work in pairs. Ask and answer these questions.
   * Which of these kinds of programmes do you like to watch? Why?
   * What are your favourite programmes on TV?
   * Are there too many programmes of one kind on TV?
2 Read the article again and tick (√) the things that are mentioned in the text.
1 Reality TV started in Sweden.
2 The prize money for Survivor is $1 million.
3 Many countries have reality TV shows.
4 Some people get married after being on a reality TV show.
5 In the UK, Big Brother is more popular than Survivor.
6 Reality TV makes money when the viewers make phone calls.
7 Loft Story and Pop Idol are the names of reality TV shows.
8 Loft Story has been very successful in France.

3 Which reality TV shows are popular in your country? Do you like reality TV shows? Why or why not?

GRAMMAR: passive

In a normal (active) sentence, we put the agent (the person or thing that does the action) before the verb.

agent verb
The viewers vote for their favourite programme.

But sometimes:
1 we do not know the agent of the action.
2 the agent is not important.
3 the agent is obvious.

In these cases we can use the passive.

We form the passive with to be + past participle.

The viewers are asked to call the programme. (present simple)
The studios of Loft Story were attacked. (past simple)

See Language Reference page 94

1 Find three examples of the passive form in paragraph 3 of the article.

2 Complete the text with the passive form of the verbs in the box.

allow choose film give invite send show teach

Star Academy
Thousands of young people apply to take part in this programme. They send video tapes to the producers and a group of them (1) are chosen to take part. During the series, they live in a castle, where they (2) are allowed to sing and dance. They (3) are not allowed to speak to their friends or family and every moment of their life in the castle (4) is filmed. Their lives (5) are shown on TV every evening and, on Saturday, there is a special show. A famous TV star (6) is invited on the show and one of the contestants sings a song with him or her. At the end of the programme, there is a vote and one person (7) is sent home. At the end of the series, the winner is (8) given a contract to make an album.

3 2.21 Listen to the recording to check your answers.

4 Choose the correct verb form to complete the sentences.

For Love or Money
1 This programme showed / was shown on American TV for the first time in 2003.
2 In this programme, fifteen women tried / were tried to win the heart of a rich young man.
3 In the first episode, the women learnt / were learnt that there was also a prize of $1 million.
4 The women told / were told to keep the prize a secret from the young man.
5 The man and the women took / were taken to different Californian cities to go out on dates.
6 At the end of each week, one woman left / was left in the show.
7 In the final show, the last woman told / was told she must choose between the man and the money.

5 Think of a reality TV programme that you know.

Complete the sentences below to describe the programme.

| The contestants are taken |
| The winner is given |
| The programme is shown |
| Filmed |
| Invited |
| Not allowed |
| Sent |

SPEAKING

1 Work in groups. You are going to plan your own reality TV show. Use these questions to help you.
• What do the people on the show do?
• Where is the show filmed?
• What is the show called?
• How many people take part?
• What sort of people?
• Are there any famous people in the show?
• How is the winner decided?
• What is the prize?

2 You all work for a TV company. Take it in turns to sell your show to the other groups. Then, as a class, vote for the best idea.
9c | Oscars and raspberries

Speaking

1. Work in pairs. Ask and answer these questions.
   - How often do you go to the cinema?
   - When was the last time you went?
   - Who did you go with?
   - What did you see?
   - What did you think of the film?

Vocabulary: films

1. Read the information about Titanic below and find words or phrases that match these definitions.
   - clothes that are worn in a film
   - music that is played during a film
   - the main actors are
   - the person in charge of making a film
   - unusual images that are made for a film

TITANIC

Written and directed by James Cameron, Titanic is set on the great cruise ship that hit an iceberg and sank in 1912. It stars Kate Winslet and Leonardo DiCaprio. One of the most successful films of all time.

Titanic won 11 Oscars including:

- Best Film
- Best Director
- Best Soundtrack
- Best Special Effects
- Best Costumes

2. Work in pairs. Discuss these questions.
   - Which films can you see at the cinema at the moment in your town?
   - What do you know about the stars, the director, the soundtrack, the setting and the story of these films?

Reading

1. Read the magazine article and explain the connection between Oscars and raspberries.

Oscars night

Channel 1
22.00 This year's Razzies
22.30 This year's Oscar nominees
23.30 The stars arrive
24.00 The Oscars ceremony – live

Tonight is the night that all Hollywood is waiting for. The stars are wearing their best designer clothes and some of them are thinking about the speech they are hoping to make later. The limousines arrive at the red-carpeted entrance to the luxury Kodak Theatre and the stars are photographed by hundreds of hungry paparazzi. There are thousands in the audience, and the ceremony is watched by millions of TV viewers around the world. The winners are instant celebrities and they will earn mega-bucks with more ticket sales and new contracts. Yes, folks, it's Oscars time.

The Academy Awards started back in 1929 and the first ceremony was attended by 250 people, who paid $10 for a dinner ticket. The winners' names were published by the newspapers earlier that evening, so there were no surprises. Two years later, a librarian at the American Academy of Motion Picture Arts and Sciences said that the statue awards looked like her Uncle Oscar. The Academy Awards became Oscars and now, over 75 years later, TV companies pay more than $20 million for the rights to show the For the advertisers and designers, the record companies and the film studios, for the investors and businessmen, and for the stars themselves, the Oscars is big business.

Meanwhile, on the other side of town in a Santa Monica hotel, the winners of the Golden Raspberry Awards (the Razzies) are announced. The ceremony is shown on cable TV channels and CNN reports the winners. The show costs only $5,000 to produce and the awards are never collected. The Razzies – in their 25th year – are given to actors and film directors for being bad, really bad, and worse than bad. They were started by John Wilson, who says that most Hollywood films are rubbish. There are prizes for Worst Actor and Actress, and Worst Film. Worst Actress of the 20th Century was won by Madonna, with Sylvester Stallone taking the men's prize. 'Some of these people are so bad,' said Wilson, 'they should take up knitting.'

Find out who gets this year's Razzies (22.00), and stay tuned for this year's Oscars ceremony (24.00). Who will get Best Film? Who will make this year's most embarrassing speech? Who will wear the most ridiculous dress? It's all good fun and it's unmissable television.
2 Read the article again and say if the sentences below refer to the Oscars (O) or the Golden Raspberries (R).

1 A ticket for the ceremony cost $10.
2 This ceremony takes place first.
3 Madonna won a top award for acting.
4 They started 25 years ago.
5 The winners make speeches when they get their award.
6 Millions of people watch the ceremony on TV.
7 The ceremony takes place in a Santa Monica hotel.
8 They are named after someone’s uncle.

3 What are the best and worst films you have ever seen? Why?

GRAMMAR: passive with agent

In passive sentences, we often don’t include the agent of an action (see page 89).

On the other side of town, the winners of the Golden Raspberries are announced.

Sometimes we want or need to include the agent. We use by to include the agent.

The ceremony is watched by millions of TV viewers around the world.
The stars are photographed by hundreds of hungry paparazzi.
The first ceremony was attended by 250 people.

4 Work in pairs. Use the prompts and your own ideas to make five sentences about films, books or TV programmes you know.

(Film) (Book) (TV programme) was made in (a year, a country).
written by (name of an author).
shown on (name of a TV channel).
directed by (name of a director).

5 Work in pairs. Make quiz questions from your sentences in exercise 4.

Spider Man was made in 2002. When was Spider Man made?

6 Work with another pair of students. Ask and answer the quiz questions.

SPARKING

1 Work in pairs. Practise the short dialogue from Titanic. Remember that this is a very dramatic moment in the film.

ROSE: I saw the iceberg, Mr Andrews. And I see it in your eyes. Please tell me the truth.

MR ANDREWS: The ship will sink.

ROSE: You’re certain?

MR ANDREWS: Yes. In an hour or two or so … all this … will be at the bottom of the Atlantic.

ROSE: My God. The Titanic? Sinking?

MR ANDREWS: Please tell only who you must. I don’t want to be responsible for a panic. And get to a boat quickly. Don’t wait.

ROSE: Yes, I understand. Thank you.

2 Perform your dialogue in front of the class and listen to the dialogues of other students. Which students will win an Oscar?
9D | Box office

**Speaking**

1. Work in pairs. Look at the programme for a concert hall.
   - Who have you heard of?
   - Who would you like to see?

**Pronunciation: dates**

1. Can you say these numbers?

```
1st  11th  21st  
2nd  12th  22nd  
3rd  13th  23rd  
4th  15th  24th  
5th  16th  31st  
6th  20th
```

*2.22 Listen to the recording to check your pronunciation.*

2. There are many different ways of writing dates.

```
20th September  20 September  20/09
September 20th  September 20th  20/9
```

*2.23 Listen to two different ways of saying these dates. Complete the missing words in the spaces below.*

1. September ____ twentieth
2. ____ twentieth ____ September

*2.24 Listen to the recording and fill in the missing dates on the concert programme.*

3. Work in pairs. Write four dates that are important for you.
   Ask your partner what their dates are and why they are important.

   20/9 – That's my daughter's birthday.
LISTENING

1 Complete the questions with a word or phrase from the box.

booking fee  box office  circle  credit card  matinee  sold out

1 When you buy tickets for a show, do you usually go to the ____ or to a ticket agency?
2 When you buy tickets at an agency or on the internet, is there a ____? How much is it?
3 When you buy tickets, do you prefer to pay in cash or by ____?
4 Have you ever wanted to buy tickets for a show that was ____?
5 At the theatre, do you prefer an evening performance or a ____?
6 Do you prefer to sit downstairs in the stalls or upstairs in the ____?

2 Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions in exercise 1.

3 2.25–2.28 Listen to four people telephoning the box office of a concert hall. For each person, complete the information in the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>concert</th>
<th>speaker 1</th>
<th>speaker 2</th>
<th>speaker 3</th>
<th>speaker 4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>date</td>
<td>22 December</td>
<td>(4)</td>
<td>3 September</td>
<td>21 September</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kind of ticket</td>
<td>stalls</td>
<td>circle</td>
<td>stalls</td>
<td>(9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>number of tickets</td>
<td>(1)</td>
<td>(5)</td>
<td>(7)</td>
<td>2 tickets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>price</td>
<td>(2)</td>
<td>£58.00</td>
<td>(8)</td>
<td>(10)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4 2.25–2.28 Listen to the conversations again to check your answers.

FUNCTIONAL LANGUAGE: at the box office

1 Complete column A with a phrase from column B.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 What date would</td>
<td>a details please?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Would you like the matinee</td>
<td>b do you want?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 How many tickets</td>
<td>c fee of two pounds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Where would you like</td>
<td>d for you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 I’ll see what seats</td>
<td>e or the evening performance?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 I’ll just check</td>
<td>f pounds altogether.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 I’m sorry, sir</td>
<td>g to sit?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 There’s a booking</td>
<td>h we’re sold out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 That’s fifty-eight</td>
<td>i we’ve got available.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 Could I take your</td>
<td>j you like?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Look at tapescripts 2.25–2.28 on pages 143–144 to check your answers.

Roleplay

2 Work in pairs, A and B.

A: Choose a show at the Metropolitan Hall that you would like to see. Telephone the box office and book your tickets.
B: You work at the box office of the Metropolitan Hall. Answer the telephone and decide what tickets you have available for the different shows.

SPEAKING

1 Think of a concert you have been to. You are going to talk to a partner about it. Use these questions to prepare what you are going to say.
- What concert was it? When and where?
- Who did you go with?
- How much did you pay for the tickets?
- Why did you go to this concert?
- What kind of music was it?
- How well could you see and hear?
- Did you dance or sing?
- How long was the concert?
- Did you have a good time?

2 Work in pairs. Tell your partner about the concert.

Useful language

The worst/best concert I've been to was ... I've always been a fan of/interested in ... What I liked most about the concert was ...
**GRAMMAR**

**Passive**

In a normal (active) sentence, we put the agent (the person or thing that does the action) before the verb.

agent verb

_The viewers vote for their favourite programme._

But sometimes:
1. we do not know the agent of the action.
2. the agent is not important.
3. the agent is obvious.

In these cases we often use the passive.

_The TV studios were attacked last night._

_A famous TV star is invited on the show._

_He was arrested for driving too fast._

We make the passive with _to be_ + past participle.

**Present simple passive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Affirmative &amp; Negative</th>
<th>Question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>I'm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'m not</td>
<td>I'm not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He/She/It</td>
<td>'s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isn't</td>
<td>isn't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You/We/They</td>
<td>'re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aren't</td>
<td>aren't</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Affirmative & Negative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past simple passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Affirmative &amp; Negative</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He/she/it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You/we/they</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weren't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Question</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Why was I invited to the party?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>was I invited to the party?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We often don't include the agent of an action in passive sentences.

_The winners are announced at the end of the show._

Sometimes, we want or need to include the agent. We use _by_ to include the agent.

_The final episode of Big Brother was watched by 15 million people._

_The Olympics were started by the Greeks._

---

**FUNCTIONAL LANGUAGE**

**At the box office**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>What</th>
<th>date(s)</th>
<th>kind of seats</th>
<th>would you like?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Which performance do you want?**

**How many tickets**

Where would you like to sit?

I'll see what seats we've got available.

I'll just check for you.

I'm sorry, sir, we're sold out.

There's a booking fee of ...

That's 58 pounds altogether.

Could I take your details, please?
## Word List

### -ing & -ed Adjectives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>annoyed</td>
<td>/ə'naɪd/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>annoying</td>
<td>/ə'nɒɪŋ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bored</td>
<td>/bɔːrd/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boring</td>
<td>/ˈbɔːrɪŋ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>depressed</td>
<td>/dɪˈprest/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>depressing</td>
<td>/dɪˈpreʃəŋ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disappointed</td>
<td>/dɪsˈpeɪntɪd/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disappointing</td>
<td>/dɪsˈpeɪntɪŋ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>excited</td>
<td>/ɪkˈsɪtɪd/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exciting</td>
<td>/ɪkˈsɪtɪŋ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fascinated</td>
<td>/fəˈzæsɪteɪd/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fascinating</td>
<td>/fəˈzæsɪteɪŋ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frightened</td>
<td>/ˈfrərɪnt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frightening</td>
<td>/ˈfrərɪntɪŋ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relaxed</td>
<td>/ˈrɛlkst/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relaxing</td>
<td>/ˈrɛləksɪŋ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>surprised</td>
<td>/səˈprɔːzd/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>surprising</td>
<td>/səˈprɔːrizəŋ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tired</td>
<td>/taɪd/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tiring</td>
<td>/ˈtaɪrɪŋ/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### TV Programmes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>chat show n C</td>
<td>/tʃæt ʃəʊ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>current affairs</td>
<td>/ˈkʌrənt əˈfeəz/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>programme n C ***</td>
<td>/prəˈɡraʊm/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>documentary n C</td>
<td>/doʊˈdəmnətri/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>game show n C</td>
<td>/ɡeɪm ʃəʊ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sitcom n C</td>
<td>/sɪˈtkɒm/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soap opera n C</td>
<td>/ˈsoʊp əˈpɜːrə/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sports programme</td>
<td>/ˈspɔːts  prəˈɡraʊm/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Films

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>acting n U</td>
<td>/ˈæktɪŋ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>actor n C ***</td>
<td>/ˈæktər/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>actress n C</td>
<td>/ˈæktrɪs/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>direct v **</td>
<td>/dɪˈrekt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>director n C ***</td>
<td>/dɪˈrektər/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extra n C</td>
<td>/ˈɛkstrə/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>role n C ***</td>
<td>/rəʊl/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>setting n C *</td>
<td>/ˈsetɪŋ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soundtrack n C</td>
<td>/ˈsɔʊndtræk/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>special effects n pl</td>
<td>/ˈspeʃəl  rɪˈfɪkt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>star v **</td>
<td>/stɑːr/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Other Words & Phrases

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>agent n C *</td>
<td>/ˈeɡənt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>album n C</td>
<td>/ˈælbum/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>announce v *</td>
<td>/əˈnəʊns/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arena n C</td>
<td>/ˈɛriən/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attack v ***</td>
<td>/əˈtæk/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attend v **</td>
<td>/əˈtɛnd/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>available adj **</td>
<td>/əˈvərəbl/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>award n C **</td>
<td>/əˈwoːrd/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bedtime n U</td>
<td>/ˈbɛtdaɪm/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boat n C ***</td>
<td>/bəʊt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>booking fee</td>
<td>/ˈbʊkɪŋ fɪ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>building n C ***</td>
<td>/ˈbjuːɪnɪŋ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cabaret n C/U</td>
<td>/ˈkeəbɛrɪ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cable TV n U</td>
<td>/ˈkeɪbl tɪːˈvɪ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>circle n C ***</td>
<td>/ˈsɜːkl/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>civilization n C/U</td>
<td>/ˌsɪvəlɪˈzeɪʃn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>classical music n U</td>
<td>/ˈkælɪssɪk  ˈmjʊzɪk/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conduct v</td>
<td>/kənˈdʌkt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contract n C ***</td>
<td>/kənˈtrækt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cost v ***</td>
<td>/kɒst/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cruise n C</td>
<td>/kruːz/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dance v ***</td>
<td>/dɑːns/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>designer n C *</td>
<td>/dʒəˈnaɪzər/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>detail n C ***</td>
<td>/ˈdeɪtl/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dream n C ***</td>
<td>/drem/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dream v</td>
<td>/drem/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>election n C ***</td>
<td>/ɪˈlektʃn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>entertainment n U **</td>
<td>/ˌentəˈrɛntmənt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>entrance n C ***</td>
<td>/ɪnˈtrɛns/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>episode n C</td>
<td>/ˈepiˈsoʊd/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>event n C ***</td>
<td>/ˈɪvənt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expedition n C</td>
<td>/ɪkˈspɛッドɪʃn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fame n U</td>
<td>/fəm/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fantastic adj</td>
<td>/fəntəˈstætɪk/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gorgeous adj</td>
<td>/ˈɡʊʒərəs/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>human rights n pl</td>
<td>/ˈhjuːmən  ˈraɪts/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iceberg n C</td>
<td>/ˈaɪsəbɜːɡ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>idol n C</td>
<td>/ˈaɪdəl/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impressionist n C</td>
<td>/ɪnˈpɜrməˈnɪst/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in-depth adj</td>
<td>/ɪn ˈdeəpθ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>insult v</td>
<td>/ˈɪnsʌlt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>invent v **</td>
<td>/ɪnˈvent/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>investor n C</td>
<td>/ɪnˈvestər/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jackpot n C</td>
<td>/ˈdʒækпот/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kangaroo n C</td>
<td>/ˈkæŋɡərəʊ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knitting n U</td>
<td>/ˈnɪtnɪŋ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>legend n C</td>
<td>/ˈlɛɡənd/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>limousine n C</td>
<td>/ˈlɪməsɪn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>line-up n C</td>
<td>/ˈlaɪn ʌp/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loft n C</td>
<td>/lɔft/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>masterpiece n C</td>
<td>/ˈmæstərpiːz/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>matinee n C</td>
<td>/ˈmeɪtiːn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>musical n C</td>
<td>/ˈmjuːzɪkl/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>old-fashioned adj *</td>
<td>/ˈɔld ˈfeɪʃənd/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>painting n C/U</td>
<td>/ˈpeɪntɪŋ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>panic n U/v</td>
<td>/ˈpeɪnɪk/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paparazzi n pl</td>
<td>/ˌpæprəˈrætsi/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>performance n C ***</td>
<td>/ˈpɜrˈfɔrməns/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pronounce v *</td>
<td>/prəˈnʌns/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>publish v ***</td>
<td>/ˈpʌblɪʃ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>raspberry n C</td>
<td>/ˈræzberi/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reality n U **</td>
<td>/ˈrɛələti/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>record n C ***</td>
<td>/ˈrekərd/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>report v **</td>
<td>/rɪˈpɔːrt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>requiem n C</td>
<td>/ˈriːkwiːm/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ridiculous adj</td>
<td>/rɪˈdɪklədʒəs/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>series n C ***</td>
<td>/ˈsiəriːz/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>session n C **</td>
<td>/ˈsɛʃn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sold out adj</td>
<td>/səld ˈaʊt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spy n C</td>
<td>/spaɪ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stalls</td>
<td>/stoʊlz/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>statue n C</td>
<td>/ˈsteɪtʃuː/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stayed</td>
<td>/ˈsteɪt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>survivor n C</td>
<td>/ˈsəvərɪə/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>talented adj</td>
<td>/ˈtæntəld/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV channel</td>
<td>/tʃeɪn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unmissable adj</td>
<td>/ˈʌnˌmɪsəbəl/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>urban adj</td>
<td>/ˈɜːbən/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>videotape n C</td>
<td>/ˈvɪdiəteɪp/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>viewer n C</td>
<td>/ˈvjuər/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weekly adj</td>
<td>/ˈwɛlikə/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wharf n C</td>
<td>/wɔːf/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Animal lovers

**Speaking**

1 Work in pairs. Discuss these questions.

- What kinds of animals do people have as pets in your country?
- Choose a pet from the box for the people in the photos. Explain your reasons.

- cat  dog  goldfish  hamster  lizard
- monkey  parrot  pig  rabbit  rat

- Which is your favourite animal? Why?

**Reading**

1 Do you know any famous Americans who have pets? Make a list.

Now read the article and underline the famous people it mentions. Were they on your list?

2 The writer gives four reasons for why he thinks Americans are crazy about animals. Tick (✓) the reasons that he mentions.

1 Some hotels have special services for dogs.
2 For some people, pets are more important than children.
3 Some Americans have strange pets (for example, pigs and lizards).
4 There are fashion shows for pets.
5 Some people ask the vet to do strange things.
6 Some people take their pets to psychiatrists.
7 Americans spend a lot of money on their pets.

3 Are people in your country crazy about animals?

For years, I have thought that we Americans are probably crazy. Crazy about animals, that is. But now I am sure. I saw an ad in the paper the other day for the Ritz Hotel in Miami which has been open since September 2002. It has a special dog program, with dog menus, dog movies and dog music in the library. It sounds perfect for Oprah Winfrey who never travels without her dogs. I wonder what the hotel does for other animals of the stars. George Clooney, for example, has had a pig (called Max) for many years and Leonardo DiCaprio has a pet lizard.

In the same newspaper was an article which proves my point. The article, *Hollywood's Super-Vet Tells All*, was about Dr Amy Attas. Dr Attas sounds perfectly normal, unlike some of her customers. Dr Attas has run a veterinary practice, called CityPets, for the last ten years. Her customers are the rich and famous and, since she began the practice, she has looked after the pets of people like Naomi Campbell, Joan Rivers and Uma Thurman.

One of her best stories is about a late-night phone-call that she received from the wife of hockey star, Wayne Gretzky. Their dog was crying and Wayne could not sleep. If Wayne doesn't sleep, he doesn't play good hockey, said the wife. The vet visited the house and examined the dog which had a cold! Another time, she had a call from Cher, who was in Italy. Cher wanted to bring an Italian dog home with her. It had a skin problem and she wanted Dr Attas to come to the airport to look after it. At midnight.

Crazy stuff, huh? No, the really crazy stuff came from another article, this one in the *Wall Street Journal*. Since this time last year, the US has spent $30 billion on pets. That's about the same as the gross national product of a medium-sized South American country. And that's what I call really crazy.
GRAMMAR: present perfect simple with *for* & *since*

We use the present perfect simple for states that began in the past and continue into the present. The states are unfinished.

> How long *have you had* your pet? *I've had it for* many years.  
> *I've had it since* my sixteenth birthday.

---

**for** many years  
(a period of time)

---

**past** since my 16th birthday **now**  
(a point in time)

---

**future**

We use the past simple for actions and states that are finished. Compare these examples.

Present perfect simple  
*She's had it for* many years (and she still has it).

Past simple  
*She had it* for many years (but she doesn't have it now).

SEE LANGUAGE REFERENCE PAGE 104

---

3 Complete the phrases with *for* or *since*.

1 ___ 2002  
2 ___ a day or two  
3 ___ Monday  
4 ___ yesterday  
5 ___ I left school  
6 ___ three years  
7 ___ a few weeks  
8 ___ an hour  
9 ___ the lesson started  
10 ___ five minutes  
11 ___ half past six  
12 ___ last week

---

4 How many different ways can you complete the questions?

1 How long have you been ___ ?  
2 How long have you had ___ ?  
3 How long have you known ___ ?

---

5 Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions in exercise 4.

---

**SPEAKING**

1 Work in pairs. Turn to page 132.

Take it in turns to choose one of the animals in the picture. Ask and answer *yes/no* questions to find out which animal it is. Use these questions and your own ideas.

- Has it got four legs?  
- Is it a farm animal?  
- Is it a kind of bird?  
- Do people keep it as a pet?  
- Does it eat other animals?  
- Can it run very fast?  
- Is it dangerous?

---

2 2.29 Listen to the recording to check your answers.

---

1 Complete the text. Put the verbs in brackets into the present perfect simple or the past simple.

Oscar Werbeniuk, who is 61, (1) ___ (*live*) all his life in the same New Jersey house. He (2) ___ (*love*) animals, especially cats, since he was a child. He (3) ___ (*find*) his first cat, Tabatha, in the street in 1981, and he (4) ___ (*find*) another 43 cats since then. But Tabatha – who died in 1990 – (5) ___ (*have*) babies and Oscar soon (6) ___ (*have*) more than a hundred cats. For the last fifteen years, there (7) ___ (*be*) more than two hundred cats in his house. Oscar is lucky because his parents (8) ___ (*be*) very rich, so he (9) ___ (*never / worry*) about money. In fact, since 1999, Oscar (10) ___ (*be*) so busy that he (11) ___ (*not / leave*) his house.
Stress, itself, is not an illness, but it can certainly contribute to illnesses, some of them serious. When you feel under stress, your body produces more of the hormones adrenaline and cortisol. As a result, the body needs more oxygen and your heart rate and blood pressure go up. At its most serious, this can lead to heart problems, but stress is also related to weight problems, coughs and colds. Scientists have also discovered that stress can lead to the loss of brain cells.

The most common cause of stress is over-work, but a difficult boss or problems with your colleagues are also common causes. Some jobs are more stressful than others, with teachers and police officers at the top of the scale and beauty therapists at the bottom. From time to time, we hear of celebrities suffering from stress, footballers like Ronaldo or the American actress, Winona Ryder. But stress can affect us all and the figures prove it. 40 million working days are lost in the UK every year because of stress-related illnesses. What is more, people who are suffering from stress do not work as well as usual. The situation is so serious that some companies now offer relaxation and stress management classes.

If you think you, too, are suffering from stress, it’s important to know if it is causing you health problems. If it is, see your doctor and talk about it.

3 Read the article again and answer the questions.
1 What are three symptoms of stress?
2 How many adults suffer from stress?
3 Which hormones does the body produce when it is under stress?
4 What illnesses are related to stress?
5 Name two stars who have suffered from stress.
6 How many working days are lost in Britain every year because of stress?
7 What are some companies doing about stress?

4 How stressful is your work and day-to-day life?
GRAMMAR: present perfect simple for unfinished time

We use the present perfect simple to talk about finished states that happened in a period of time which is not finished. The time phrases we use (for example this week, in the last twelve months) are connected to present time.

I’ve had two days off work this week. (This week is not finished.)
How often have you had a headache in the last twelve months? (In the last twelve months includes this month.)

We use the past simple to talk about finished actions and states that happened in a period of time that is also finished. The time phrases we use (for example, last Friday, two years ago) are not connected to present time.

I was ill last Friday.
He went to relaxation classes two years ago.

See Language Reference page 104

1 Mark the phrases unfinished time (U) or finished time (F).

yesterday U last month F this month U
in 1998 F last week F this week F
in my life U one year ago F today F
in the last month U since last year U this morning U

2 Complete the sentences with the correct verb form.

1. I have been / went for a walk a few days ago.
2. I’ve done / did a lot of sport this month.
3. I’ve made / made some good friends this year.
4. I have been / was very busy last month.
5. I’ve been / was quite tired in the last two weeks.
6. I haven’t had / didn’t have much free time this week.
7. I have had / had a big party for my last birthday.

3 Now change the sentences so that they are true for you.

4 Complete the sentences. Put the verbs in brackets into the present perfect simple or the past simple.

1. How many cups of coffee ____ (you / drink) yesterday?
2. How many films ____ (you / see) this month?
3. How many times ____ (you / take) a train/bus this week?
4. How much money ____ (you / spend) today?
5. How much junk food ____ (you / eat) last week?
6. How often ____ (you / be) late for school/work this year?
7. How often ____ (you / be) ill last year?
8. Which countries ____ (you / visit) in the last five years?

5 Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions in exercise 4.

VOCABULARY & SPEAKING: collocations with get

1 Complete column A with a phrase from column B.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>They got into financial difficulties</td>
<td>a and the children stayed with their mother.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She got promoted</td>
<td>b and they closed their company.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They got into trouble</td>
<td>c and took two months off work.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He got fired</td>
<td>d because he was always late.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She got very ill</td>
<td>e with the police.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They got married</td>
<td>f in a beautiful church.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>g because her work was so good.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Many events in our lives can cause stress. Put the events in exercise 1 in order of stressfulness.

3 Work in groups. Compare and discuss your lists. As a group, decide on the four most stressful events.

I think that getting divorced is the most stressful because …

I don’t think that getting promoted is very stressful.

4 These suggestions come from books about stress. Which ones work for you?

What else do you do when you are feeling stressed?

DEALING WITH STRESS

Do some breathing exercises.
Go shopping and buy something you like.
Go for a walk.
Eat some fruit or vegetables.
Talk to a friend.
Listen to some music.
Think of something positive.
Ask a friend to brush your hair.
Have a ten minute break from what you are doing.
10c | Marathon men

Speaking & Vocabulary: Sport

1. Look at these sentences. Mark each one like this:

   ✓✓ very true for me
   ✓ true for me
   ✗ not true for me

   1. I am fit.
   2. I enjoyed sport at school.
   3. My health is very important to me.
   4. I like lots of different sports.
   5. I would like to run a marathon.

2. Work in pairs. Compare your answers to exercise 1. For each sentence, give some extra information.

3. Match the sports in the box to the pictures A–I.

   aerobics  cycling  golf  running  squash  swimming  tennis  weight training  yoga

   A  B  C  D  E  F  G  H  I

4. Put the sports in exercise 3 into three groups according to the verbs they go with.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>do</th>
<th>go</th>
<th>play</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aerobics</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. Which are the best sports to keep fit? Which are the best sports to watch?
2.30 Now listen to the programme to find out if you were right.

2.30 Listen again and choose the correct answers.

1. The winner of the men's marathon was Martin Lel. Rodgers Ron.
2. The fastest woman ran the race in 2 hours 10 minutes and 30 seconds. 2 hours 22 minutes and 31 seconds.
3. They ran their first marathon in the North Pole. Patagonia.
4. In the last seven days, Fienes and Stroud have been to Sydney, Singapore and Cairo. the Andes, the Amazon and the desert of Oman.
5. They have raised more than two / four million pounds for a multiple sclerosis research centre.
6. Ranulph Fienes is going into hospital / to work soon.

Who are the greatest sports heroes in your country? What have they done?

GRAMMAR: present perfect simple with been & gone

1. Match sentences 1 and 2 to the diagrams A and B.
1. Ranulph has gone to Singapore.
2. Ranulph has been to Singapore.

2. Complete the dialogue with been or gone.

Jane: Hello.
Mark: Hi, it's Mark here. Is Rick there please?
Jane: Hi, Mark. No, I'm sorry. He's (1) ___ away for the week.
Mark: Oh? Work? Holiday?
Jane: Both. He's (2) ___ to Patagonia - for a walk.
Mark: Oh, I've (3) ___ there. Twice. It's really nice. Why didn't you go with him?
Jane: Because my boss has (4) ___ to Nepal on business so I'm in charge of the office.
Mark: Nepal? Nice!
Jane: Have you (5) ___ there, too?
Mark: Yes, I've (6) ___ a few times, actually.
Jane: Really? I've only (7) ___ there once. I liked it.
Mark: Yes, it's an excellent place for walking.
Jane: Yes. Well, I'll tell him you called.
Jane: Bye, Mark.

2.31 Listen to the recording to check your answers. Then work in pairs and practise the dialogue.

PRONUNCIATION: /ɔ/:

1. What are the missing letters in the words below? All the words have the same vowel sound.
   1. b e f r e 6. c l l e d
   2. f _ r 7. s p r t
   3. N e w Y _ r k 8. s r t
   4. n r t h 9. th g h t
   5. r e p r t 10. w l k i n g

2. Which of these words contain the same sound (/ɔ/)?
   1. awful
   2. caught
   3. cause
   4. daughter
   5. important
   6. morning
   7. squash
   8. thought
   9. walk
   10. would

2.32 Listen to the recording to check your answers.

DID YOU KNOW?

1. Read the information about sport in Australia.

Australia is one of the most sporting countries in the world. Although the population is quite small (about 20 million), it has a large number of world champions in many different sports. About three quarters of all Australians do some kind of sport. The most popular are walking, swimming, aerobics, cycling, tennis and golf. They also enjoy watching sport. The most important events in the sporting calendar are the Grand Final of Australian Rules Football, international cricket matches, the Melbourne Cup (horse racing), international basketball and soccer matches, and the Australian Grand Prix (motor racing).

2. Work in pairs. Discuss these questions.
   - What are the most popular sports in your country?
   - What are the most important sporting events in your country?
   - Describe a sporting event that you have attended.
VOCABULARY & SPEAKING: body & health

1 Label the parts of the body A–J in the picture with the words in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>back</th>
<th>chest</th>
<th>ear</th>
<th>eye</th>
<th>head</th>
<th>mouth</th>
<th>neck</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nose</td>
<td>stomach</td>
<td>throat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

How many other parts of the body can you name?

2 What do you think is wrong with the people in the doctor's waiting room? Use the language in the boxes to describe them.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>He</th>
<th>She</th>
<th>'s got</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a headache.</td>
<td>a stomach ache.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a cold.</td>
<td>a cough.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flu.</td>
<td>a hangover.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a temperature.</td>
<td>a pain in his/her back/neck, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>His</th>
<th>Her</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>back head stomach</td>
<td>throat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hurts.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

LISTENING

1 2.33–2.34 Listen to two men at the doctor's. Why are they quite happy when they leave?

2 2.33–2.34 Listen to the conversations again. Complete the doctor's notes for both patients.

| back | cold | cough | depressed | eyes | flu | paracetamol | specialist | stomach ache | stress |

Name: Stuart Simeon
Symptoms: He's got a headache, a cold and a (1) __________. He's also got pains in his (2) __________, chest and neck. His temperature is 39°.
Other notes: His girlfriend has left him. He seems (3) __________.
Diagnosis: (4) __________
Treatment / Medicine: strong (5) __________

Name: Mike Marks
Symptoms: He is extremely nervous. He's got a (6) __________, but he also says he feels hot and (7) __________. His (8) __________ hurt.
Other notes: He doesn't eat well – he lives on coffee.
Diagnosis: (9) __________
Treatment / Medicine: Appointment with a (10) __________

3 How often do you go to the doctor's? How do you feel about going to the doctor's?

Work in pairs. Ask and answer these questions.

- When was the last time you were ill? What was the matter?
- Did you see a doctor? Did the doctor give you a prescription?
- Did you take any time off work/school?
**FUNCTIONAL LANGUAGE: at the doctor’s**

1. Look at the phrases. Who is speaking: the doctor (D) or the patient (P)?
   a. I feel awful.
   b. I think you should take a few days off work.
   c. I’ll give you a prescription.
   d. I’ll have a look at you.
   e. Is there anything I can take for it?
   f. It’s nothing to worry about.
   g. It’s very painful.
   h. What’s the matter?
   i. What’s wrong with me?
   j. Where does it hurt?

2. Complete the dialogue with phrases a–j from exercise 1.

   **Doctor:** Come in. Take a seat.
   **Patient:** Thank you.
   **Doctor:** Now, (1) ______.
   **Patient:** (2) ______ It’s my back.
   **Doctor:** (3) ______
   **Patient:** Here and here.
   **Doctor:** OK. (4) ______ Take off your shirt. Does this hurt?
   **Patient:** Yes, it does. (5) ______ Is it serious?
   **Doctor:** No, (6) ______
   **Patient:** (7) ______ Do you know?
   **Doctor:** I think you’ve pulled a muscle.
   **Patient:** (8) ______
   **Doctor:** Yes, (9) ______
   **Patient:** Thank you. And what about work? Is it OK to work?
   **Doctor:** No, not at the moment. (10) ______ And come back and see me in ten days.
   **Patient:** OK. I’ll make an appointment with the receptionist. Thank you. Bye.

3. 2.35 Listen to the recording to check your answers. Then work in pairs and practise the dialogue.

**Roleplay**

4. Work in pairs, A and B.
   **A:** You are the patient. Describe how you feel.
   **B:** You are the doctor. Ask the patient questions about how they are feeling and suggest what she/he should do.
   Use the phrases in exercise 1 to help you.

**PRONUNCIATION: sentence stress**

1. 2.36 Listen to a joke. Notice how the important words are stressed.
   **Patient:** Doctor, doctor, what did the X-ray of my head show?
   **Doctor:** Absolutely nothing!

2. Work in pairs. Practise reading these jokes. Stress the words that are underlined.

   **1 Patient:** Doctor, doctor, I’m seeing double.
   **Doctor:** Take a seat, please.
   **Patient:** Which one?

   **2 Patient:** Doctor, doctor, I’ve got a memory problem.
   **Doctor:** How long have you had this problem?
   **Patient:** What problem?

   **3 Patient:** Doctor, doctor, I feel very nervous. This is the first operation I’ve ever had.
   **Doctor:** Don’t worry. It’s my first time, too.

3. 2.37–2.39 Listen to the recording to check your pronunciation.
GRAMMAR

Present perfect simple 2

We use the present perfect simple to show the connection between present time and past time.

We use the present perfect simple for states that began in the past and continue into the present. The states are unfinished.

   How long have you had your dog?
   I've had it for many years.

We use the past simple for finished actions and states.
Compare these examples.

Present perfect simple
   She's had a dog for many years (and she still has it).
Past simple
   She had a dog for many years (but she doesn't have it now).

We can also use the present perfect simple to talk about finished states that happened in a period of time which is not finished. The time phrases we use (for example, this week, in the last twelve months) are connected to present time.

   I've been ill twice this year.
   How often have you been ill this year?
   (this year is not finished)

We use the past simple to talk about finished actions and states that happened in a period of time that is also finished. The time phrases we use (for example, last Friday, two years ago) are not connected to present time.

   I was ill three times last year. (last year is finished)

Time phrases

The following time phrases include present time. They are often used with the present perfect simple.

today
this week/month/year
in the last week/the last year/my life

The following time phrases are not connected to present time. They are not usually used with the present perfect simple.

in 1992
last week/year
yesterday
one week/two days ago

With some time phrases, the connection to the present depends on the time of speaking. This morning is connected to present time if it is now before midday. It is not connected to present time if it is now after midday.

   I've read three reports this morning.
   (spoken at 11.00 am)
   I read three reports this morning. (spoken at 3.00 pm)

We use for to talk about periods of time.
   I've lived here for three years.
   He studied for ten minutes.

We use since to talk about the starting point of an action or state.

   She's been ill since Monday.
   I haven't spoken to them since we had an argument.

Been & gone

The verb go has two past participles: been and gone.

We use gone to show that a person has left a place.

   A -------- B
   He has gone to Singapore.

We use been to show that a person has left a place and returned.

   A -------- B
   He has been to Singapore.

See page 74 for more information about the present perfect simple.
FUNCTIONAL LANGUAGE

At the doctor's

What's the matter?
What's wrong with you?
Where does it hurt?

I feel awful.
It's very painful.
It hurts.

I'll have a look at you.
I'll give you a prescription.
I think you should take a few days off work.
It's nothing to worry about.

WORD LIST

Animals

cat n C *** /kæt/  
dog n C *** /dɒg/  
goldfish n C /ɡɔldfɪʃ/  
hamster n C /ˈhæmstoʊr/  
lizard n C /ˈlɪzəd/  
monkey n C /ˈmʌŋki/  
parrot n C /ˈpærət/  
pig n C * /pɪɡ/  
rabbit n C /ˈræbɪt/  
rat n C /ræt/  
squash n U /ˈskwɒʃ/  
swimming n U /ˈswɪmɪŋ/  
tennis n U /ˈtɛnɪs/  
weight training n U /ˈweɪt ˈtremɪŋ/  
yoga n U /ˈjəʊɡə/  

Body & health

adrenaline n U /əˈdrenəlɪn/  
antibiotic n C /æntɪˈbaɪətɪk/  
appointment n C *** /ˈɑːpɔɪntmənt/  
aspirin n C/U /ˈæsprɪn/  
back n C *** /bæk/  
blood pressure n U /ˈblɒd ˈpreʃər/  
brain n C ** /breɪn/  
breast cancer /breɪst ˈkænsər/  
breathe v *** /briːθ/  
cell n C ** /sɛl/  
check-up n C *** /tʃek ʌp/  
chest n *** /kɛst/  
cold n C ** /kəʊld/  
cough v * /kɒf/  
cough n C /kɒf/  
diagnosis n C /dɪəˈgaɪznəsɪs/  
earn n C *** /ɜə/  
examine v *** /ɪɡˈzæmɪn/  
exhausted, adj /ɪɡˈzɔːstɪd/  
eye n C *** /aɪ/  
flu n U /fljuː/  
hangover n C /ˈhæŋəvər/  
headache n C * /hedˈeɪk/  
heart attack n C /hɑːt ˈækkt/  
heart rate /hɑːrt ˈreɪt/  
hormone n C /ˈhɔːrnən/  
hurt v *** /hɜːt/  
ilness n C *** /ɪlnəs/  
mouth n C *** /maʊθ/  
multiple sclerosis n U /ˈmʌltɪpl ˈskləʊrəsɪs/  
muscle n C ** /ˈmʌskl/  
neck n C *** /nek/  
nose n C *** /nəʊz/  
operation n C *** /əˈpɜːrʃən/  
oxogen n U /ˈɔksɪdʒən/  
pain n C *** /pɛin/  
painful adj * /ˈpɛɪnfʊl/  
paracetamol n C/U /ˌpærəˈsɛtəməl/  
prescription n C /prɪˈskriptʃən/  
skin n U *** /skɪn/  
specialist n C * /ˈspɛʃəlɪst/  
stomach ache n C/U /ˈstɒmək ˈeɪk/  
suffer (from sth) v *** /ˈsʌfər/  
symptom n C * /ˈsɪmptəm/  
temperature n C/U *** /ˈtɛmpərətʃər/  
throat n C ** /θreʊt/  
treatment n C *** /ˈtretmənt/  

Other words & phrases

achievement n C ** /əˈtɪʃənmənt/  
affect v *** /ˈæfekt/  
arrival n C/U ** /əˈrɛvl/  
beauty therapist /ˈbjuːti ˈθerəpɪst/  
bronze n U /ˈbrɒnzd/  
brush v * /brʌʃ/  
calendar n C /ˈkæləndər/  
cane n C/v /ˈkæn/  
cause v *** /kəʊz/  
celebrate v ** /ˌsɛləˈbreɪt/  
continent n C ** /ˈkɒntɪnənt/  
contribute v *** /kənˈtrɪbjuːt/  
crazy about (sth) adj /ˈkrɛzi əˈbəʊt/  
cry v *** /kraɪ/  
deep adj *** /dʒiːp/  
desert n C/U ** /dɪˈzɜːrt/  
farm n C /fɑːm/  
gardener n C /ˈɡɑːdənər/  
gross national product (GNP) n U /ˈɡrɑːs nɛʃən(ə)l ˈpɜːdʌkt/  
hockey n U /ˈhɒki/  
memory n C *** /ˈmɛməri/  
official adj *** /ˈɔfɪʃl/  
over-work /ˈəʊvərˌwɜːk/  
potn n C *** /ˈpɔːtn/  
prove v *** /pruːv/  
raise v *** /reɪz/  
scale n C *** /skeɪl/  
spectator n C /ˈspektrətər/  
stopover n C /ˈstəʊpəvər/  
stress n U * /stres/  
stressful adj /ˈstresfl/  
stuff n U *** /stʌf/  
up-to-date adj /ˈʌp təˈdeɪt/  
vet n C /vɛt/  
veterinary practice /vɛtəriˈneəri ˈpræktɪs/  

Collocations with get

get divorced /get ˈdɜːvəd/  
get fired /get ˈfɔːrd/  
get ill /get ɪl/  
get into (financial) difficulties /get ɪntu ˈtrɪbl/  
get into trouble /get ɪntu ˈtræbl/  
get married /get ˈmærɪd/  
get promoted /get ˈprɔməʊtɪd/  

Sport

aerobics n U /əˈɛrəbɪks/  
champion n C * /ˈtʃæmpʃən/  
cricket n U /ˈkrɪkɪt/  
cyling /ˈsaɪklɪŋ/  
final n C /ˈfɪnəl/  
golf n U * /ɡɔlf/  
horse racing /hɔːs ˈræsɪŋ/  
marathon n C /ˈmærəθən/  
motor racing n U /ˈmɔtər ˈræsɪŋ/  
race n C *** /reɪs/  
racing /rəˈziŋ/  
soccer n U /ˈsɒkər/  

| 105 |
VOCABULARY & SPEAKING: personal possessions

1. Labels the pictures A–K with the words.

2. Which of these things are important to you? Why? Which things could you live without?

3. Work in pairs. Describe one of your favourite things.
   - What is it?
   - How long have you had it?
   - Where did you get it?
   - Why is it important to you?

LISTENING

1. Look at the pictures. When were these things fashionable?

2. Listen to Susan and Katy talking about things they really wanted when they were younger. Which of the things do they mention?
Listen again and complete the sentences with Susan (S) or Katy (K).

1. asked her sister for permission.
2. saw someone else with it.
3. still has it.
4. thought it was very sexy.
5. used it in a restaurant.
6. waited two years before buying it.
7. wanted to be independent.
8. wanted to impress her clients.

**FUNCTIONAL LANGUAGE:** paraphrasing

1. Sometimes you need to paraphrase when you don’t know the right word for something.

2. Listen to two people talking and fill in the gaps.

1. It’s a kind of .
   It’s a thing you .

2. They’re a sort of .
   You use them to .

**GRAMMAR:** infinitive of purpose

We can use the infinitive (with to) to talk about why we do things. It explains the reason or purpose of our actions.

*She wanted a credit card to pay for meals in restaurants.*  
*She filled out a form to get a card.*

> See Language Reference page 114

**Pronunciation:** /θ/ & /ð/

1. Listen to the sound at the beginning of these words.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>/θ/</th>
<th>/ð/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>thanks</td>
<td>than</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thing</td>
<td>this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thousand</td>
<td>those</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Put the words in the box into the correct column in the table in exercise 1.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>theatre</th>
<th>their</th>
<th>theory</th>
<th>there</th>
<th>they</th>
<th>think</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>thirteenth</th>
<th>thought</th>
<th>three</th>
<th>Thursday</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Listen to the recording and repeat these phrases.

   What do you think of their theory?
   Do they think the same thing as the others?
   Let’s meet on Thursday the thirteenth at three o’clock.
   They thought the theatre was over there.

I use my car to go to work.
11B | Fashion victim

**Speaking**

1. Work in groups. Discuss these statements.
   - You can judge a person’s personality by their clothes.
   - Clothes are more important for women than for men.
   - It’s important to look smart at work and when you go out.
   - Young people are more fashionable than their parents.

**Vocabulary: clothes**

1. Match the pictures A–S with the words in the box.

   boots cardigan dress jacket jeans jersey scarf shirt shorts skirt socks suit sweatshirt tie top trainers trousers T-shirt underwear

2. In exercise 1, which word(s):
   - is always singular/uncountable? ________
   - are always plural? ________ ________

3. Work in pairs. How much can you remember about the other students in your class? What were they wearing in the last lesson?

**Reading**

1. Look at the newspaper headline and photo. Why do you think the man on the right is wearing those clothes?

   Read the article to find out if you were right.

**Office Work**

**Worker**

Flip Flops Out of a Job

“You can’t wear those here!” It was a hot summer day, and instead of the usual ‘Good morning’ from his boss, Philip Dale was told to go home and change out of his casual shorts and flip flops. He refused and, by the end of the morning, he was out of a job.

“I work in an office and we don’t have to meet clients. Why can’t I wear what I want?” said Mr Dale. “It’s sexual discrimination. Women can wear skirts and shorts. Why do men have to wear hot trousers and ties?”

But the company disagreed. ‘This is work, not a holiday on the beach,’ said a company spokeswoman.

“It is true that Mr Dale does not have to work with customers, but he has to go in and out of the building and we must think about our image. What is more, Mr Dale’s contract says very clearly “Employees must wear suitable clothes in the workplace.” It’s a question of professionalism. Shorts and flip flops are not formal enough.’

However, Mr Dale’s lawyer said: ‘This is a question of human rights. Companies cannot tell their employees what to wear. Of course, employees should wear clothes that are suitable for their work, but there is nothing wrong with shorts in the summer. We’re talking here about a very old-fashioned company. In a modern company, like Adidas, for example, employees can wear what they want. But the really important question here is the question of sexual discrimination. If they must have rules about clothes, they cannot have some rules for men and others for women. It’s very simple, really.’

The case continues.
2 Read the article again and say if the sentences are true (T) or false (F).

1 Mr Dale's boss told him to change his clothes.  T
2 Mr Dale didn't want to change his clothes.  F
3 He went home to change into different clothes.  T
4 He often takes his clients out to dinner.  F
5 There are different rules in the company for men and women.  T
6 The company thinks that Mr Dale's clothes are too casual.  F
7 The employees of some companies can choose what they wear.  T
8 Mr Dale's lawyer thinks that the question of sexual discrimination is very complicated.  T

3 Work in pairs. Discuss these questions.
- Do you agree with Mr Dale or his company?
- What do you think are the most suitable clothes for work in an office?
- Are there any rules in your country about what you can wear to work?

GRAMMAR: modals of obligation (present time)

We use must or have to to talk about rules and things that are necessary.

Employees must wear suitable clothes.
Mr Dale has to go in and out of the building.

We use don't have to to say that something is not necessary (but it is possible or allowed).

We don't have to meet the clients.

When we ask about rules, we usually use have to, not must.

Why do men have to wear trousers?

We use can to say that something is possible or allowed.

Women can wear skirts and shorts.

We use can't to say that something is not possible or not allowed.

You can't wear those here.

1 Complete the texts with the correct verb form.

Most men in London's financial offices (1) can't / have to wear dark suits to work, but on Fridays everything is different. 23% of companies have a 'dress down' day, when they (2) do not have to / must put on their usual suit. Most of them are happy that they (3) can / can't wear anything they like at the end of the week.

(4) Do children in your country have / Have children in your country to wear a uniform to school? At most private schools in England, children (5) can't / have to wear a uniform. In most state schools, children (6) have to / can't wear a school sweatshirt, but they (7) can / don't have to choose their own trousers or skirt.

Students at the very traditional Oxford University (8) don't have to / must wear black gowns when they take their exams. At some colleges, they also (9) can't / have to wear the gowns at dinner. At Cambridge, on the other hand, students (10) can / must wear normal clothes.

2 Work in pairs. Discuss the rules in the place where you work or study. Talk about the topics in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>clothes</th>
<th>times of work/study</th>
<th>days off</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Think about what you discussed with your partner in exercise 2 and try to complete all of the sentences below. If necessary, speak to your partner from exercise 2 again.

1 I can leave work at 5 o'clock on Fridays and she can, too.

1 I can ____ and she/he can, too.
2 I can't ____, but she/he can.
3 She/He can ____ , but I can't.
4 I have to ____ and she/he has to, too.
5 I have to ____ , but she/he doesn't.
6 She/He doesn't have to ____ , but I do.
Camden Market

Home comforts

With the opening this week of a new branch of Home Comforts, Kyra Kornac now has 25 stores in her successful international chain of home and furniture shops. But the new store, in London’s Camden High Street, takes her back to where it all started. She talks about how the business began.

When I was little, my mother began selling vegetarian food from a stall at Camden Market. She couldn’t leave me at home on my own, so I had to go to the market with her.

To begin with, I didn’t have to do anything. I just sat there, and my mum told me jokes and stories so I didn’t get bored. When I got older, I gave my mum a hand and I really enjoyed it.

Then, one year, my uncle gave me a book for Christmas. It was all about making candles and I loved it. I was fourteen, and I didn’t have to go to the market anymore because Mum could leave me at home on my own. I spent my free time making candles of all different shapes and sizes. I made hundreds of them.

One day, my mother was ill so I had to go to the market on my own. I decided to take some candles with me and see if I could sell them. They were sold out in twenty minutes! The next week, my mum gave me some money to buy some wax to make more candles. Again, they sold out really quickly.

Six months later, we decided to stop doing the vegetarian food. My mum and I couldn’t make enough candles during the week, so some of my school friends started to help us. I paid them one pound for every candle, and we used to sell them for four or five times that. It was fun and my friends worked with me at the stall.

You could leave school at sixteen and I was in a hurry to leave. My uncle lent us some money and I opened my first shop in Portobello Road. Since then, I’ve never looked back. In the first store, we only sold incense and candles, but now we sell everything from designer furniture to silver jewellery. Oh, and candles, of course.

Reading

1. Look at the two photos above. Are there places like this where you live? Have you ever bought anything in places like this?

2. Read the article and explain the connection between the photos.

3. Read the article again and put the events in the correct order.
   - Her friends helped her.
   - Her mother couldn’t go to the market.
   - Kyra and her mother stopped selling food.
   - She left school.
   - Her mother started working at the market.
   - She received a book about candles.
   - She sold her first candles.
   - She started making candles.

4. Have you ever worked in a shop or a market? Would you like to? Do you know anyone who has their own business?
**GRAMMAR: modals of obligation (past time)**

1. Complete the grammar box. Put the phrases a–d in the gaps 1–4.
   
a. This was necessary.  
b. This wasn’t necessary.  
c. This was possible.  
d. This wasn’t possible.

We use modal verbs to ask and talk about obligation and possibility in the past. We do not usually use **must** or **mustn’t** when we are talking about the past.

**could + infinitive**

You could leave school at sixteen.

(1) __________

**couldn’t + infinitive**

She couldn’t leave me at home.

(2) __________

**had to + infinitive**

I had to go to the market with her.

(3) __________

**didn’t have to + infinitive**

I didn’t have to go to the market.

(4) __________

See Language Reference page 114

**DID YOU KNOW?**

1. Read the text. How many different kinds of shops are mentioned?

---

**Portobello Road** is famous for its street market (weekends), but it also has a lot of interesting antique shops. **Notting Hill Gate**

**Oxford Street** is London’s main shopping street with all the international chains (Gap, H & M, Zara, etc), large department stores and two mega-stores for CDs, DVDs and games. **Bond Street, Oxford Circus**

For books, the best place to go is **Charing Cross Road**.

There are three enormous bookshops and many small specialist bookshops. **Tottenham Court Road**

Go to **Tottenham Court Road** for computers, hi-fi, TVs and other electronic equipment. **Tottenham Court Road**

**Covent Garden** is a lively and popular area with street theatre and music, bars and restaurants. You can find all the usual clothes stores, but also lots of small specialist shops. **Covent Garden**

**Bond Street** is one of the most expensive streets in London. Chanel, Calvin Klein, DKNY, Versace, Prada — all the big names are here. **Bond Street, Green Park**

2. Work in pairs. Ask and answer these questions.

- Have you ever been to London?
- Which parts of the city did you visit?
- What did you like most and least?
- Would you like to visit any of these areas of London?

**SPEAKING**

1. Work in pairs. Choose a shopping area of your town. Look at these questions and prepare a short presentation.

   - Where is the area that you are going to talk about?
   - How can you get there? (bus, underground, etc)
   - What kind of shops are there?
   - What are your favourite shops?
   - Are there any shops that you don’t recommend?
   - What are the cafés/restaurants in the area like?
   - Is there anything else that is good or bad about this area?
At the mall

**Speaking**

1. Work in pairs. Discuss these questions.
   - Do you like shopping for clothes? What about your friends/family?
   - Which are your favourite shops for clothes?
   - Where did you buy the clothes that you are wearing?
   - Do you prefer to buy clothes with friends or alone? Why?

**Listening**

1. Look at the picture. Why do you think Bella and Mademoiselle Lajolie are unhappy?
2. **2.47** Listen to the conversation to check your answers.
3. **2.47** Listen again and choose the correct answer.
   1. Why does Bella think that shopping is easy for her friend?
      a) Because she has lots of money.
      b) Because everything looks good on her.
   2. Why didn’t Bella buy the black dress?
      a) Because she thought she looked like a waitress.
      b) Because she wanted a suit.
   3. Why does Bella decide to buy a top?
      a) Because it’s cheaper than a dress.
      b) Because she looks fat in dresses.
   4. Why doesn’t Bella want to buy something green?
      a) Because her boyfriend doesn’t like green.
      b) Because she doesn’t like green.
   5. Why does Mademoiselle Lajolie suggest a gold top?
      a) Because gold is relaxed and casual.
      b) Because Bella wears gold jewellery.
   6. Who is the party for?
      a) The students and the staff of the school.
      b) Only the staff of the school.
PRONUNCIATION: word linking

1. Listen to these phrases from the conversation. Notice how some of the words are joined together.
   - What do you think?
   - That's a thought.
   - We're in a bit of a hurry.
   - I'm afraid so.
   - Shall we go in and have a look?

2. Practise saying the phrases in exercise 1 quickly.

VOCABULARY: fit, go with & suit

1. Match the phrases in column A with phrases that mean the same in column B.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Your tie doesn't go with your shirt.</td>
<td>a. It's the right size for you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. That suit fits you.</td>
<td>b. You look good in that.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. That dress really suits you.</td>
<td>c. It isn't a good idea to wear those things together.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Work in small groups. Look at the people in the picture opposite.
   - Do all their clothes fit?
   - Do the clothes of each person go well together?
   - Do their clothes suit them?

3. Look at the clothes of the other people in your group. Is anyone in your group wearing something that would:
   - fit you?
   - go with something you are wearing?
   - suit you?

FUNCTIONAL LANGUAGE: in a clothes shop

1. Complete the conversations 1–5 with the phrases in the box.
   - can I help you
   - excuse me
   - have you got it
   - how would you like
   - I'll take this
   - I'm afraid not
   - I'm just looking
   - I'm looking for
   - try this on
   - what size

   A: Good morning, sir. ________?
   B: No, thanks. ________

   A: ________.
   B: Yes, madam. How can I help you?
   A: ________ a black jacket.
   B: Certainly. ________ are you?
   A: Medium.

   A: Can I ________ please?
   B: Of course, the changing room is over there.

   A: How does it fit?
   B: Fine, fine. ________ in green?
   A: ________, sir.

   A: ________ please.
   B: Certainly, madam. ________ to pay?
   A: Credit card.

2. Listen to the conversations to check your answers.

Roleplay

3. Work in pairs, A and B.


   B: You are a customer in a clothes shop. You enjoy shopping and you like trying on lots of different things. You are not planning to buy anything today.
**Grammar**

**Infinitive of purpose**

We can use the infinitive with *to* to talk about why we do things. It explains the reason or purpose of our actions. We can also use *in order to* + infinitive.

- *He went to the bank to get some cash.*
- *He went to the bank in order to get some cash.*

**Modals of obligation**

Modal verbs are followed by an infinitive, without *to*. The form is the same for all persons.

**Present time**

We use *must, mustn’t* and *have to* to talk about rules and things that are necessary.

- Students *must* return books to the library.
- You *mustn’t* use your mobile phone in a plane.
- You *have to* park here. That street is closed.

We use *don’t have to* to say that something is not necessary (but it is possible or allowed).

- *Children at this school don’t have to wear a uniform.*

We use *have to* to ask about rules.

- *Do I have to wear a suit at the wedding?*

We use *can* to say that something is possible or allowed.

- *Children over the age of ten can use the swimming pool.*

We use *can’t* to say that something is not possible or not allowed.

- *You can’t park your car outside the school.*

**Past time**

We don’t use *must* to talk about past time. Instead we use *had to*. We use *had to* to talk about rules and things that were necessary.

- *She had to start work at 6.00 am every morning.*

We use *didn’t have to* to say that something was not necessary (but it was possible or allowed).

- *I didn’t have to wear a uniform at school.*

We use *did + subject + have to* to ask about rules.

- *Did you have to do any homework when you were a child?*

We use *could* to say that something was possible or allowed.

- *I could stay out until ten o’clock when I was sixteen.*

We use *couldn’t* to say that something was not possible or not allowed.

- *She couldn’t go to college because she failed her exams.*

**Functional language**

**Paraphrasing**

- *It’s a kind of ...*
- *It’s a thing you ...*
- *They’re a sort of ...*
- *You use them to + infinitive ...*

**In a clothes shop**

- *(How) can I help you?*
- *What size do you take/are you?*
- *How would you like to pay?*

- *I’m just looking.*
- *I’m looking for ...*
- *Can I try this on, please?*
- *I’ll take this.*
### Word List

#### Personal possessions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>car n C</td>
<td>/kaː/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD player n C</td>
<td>/siː 'diː pliːə/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>computer n C</td>
<td>/kəmˈpjuːtə/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>credit card n C</td>
<td>/ˈkredɪt koʊd/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lipstick n C</td>
<td>/lɪpstrɪk/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>motorbike n C</td>
<td>/ˈmʌtɜːbɑːk/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP3 player</td>
<td>/em piː ˈɒriː pliːə/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pen n C</td>
<td>/pen/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phone n C</td>
<td>/fəʊn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sunglasses n plur</td>
<td>/ˈsæŋgləsiz/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV n C</td>
<td>/tviː/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>watch n C</td>
<td>/waɪtʃ/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Clothes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>boot n C</td>
<td>/bʊt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cardigan n C</td>
<td>/kɑrdiɡən/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>changing room n C</td>
<td>/tʃeɪndʒɪŋ rʊm/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dress n C</td>
<td>/dres/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fit v</td>
<td>/fɪt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flip flops n pl</td>
<td>/ˈflɪp fлоʊps/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go with v</td>
<td>/gəʊ wið/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gown n C</td>
<td>/ɡaʊn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jacket n C</td>
<td>/ˈdʒækɪt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jeans n plur</td>
<td>/dʒɪnz/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jersey n C</td>
<td>/dʒərizi/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scarf n C</td>
<td>/skɑːf/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shirt n C</td>
<td>/ʃɜːt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shorts n plur</td>
<td>/ʃɔːts/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skirt n C</td>
<td>/ɜːkɪt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sock n C</td>
<td>/sɔk/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suit n C</td>
<td>/sjuːt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suit v</td>
<td>/sjuːt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sweatshirt n C</td>
<td>/ˈswetʃɜːt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tie n C</td>
<td>/taɪ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>top n C</td>
<td>/tɒp/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trainers n plur</td>
<td>/ˈtreɪnəz/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trousers n plur</td>
<td>/traʊzəz/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>try on v</td>
<td>/trai ˈoʊn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T-shirt n C</td>
<td>/tiː ʃɜːt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>underwear n U</td>
<td>/ˈʌndərweə/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Other words & phrases

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>antique n C</td>
<td>/ˈæntɪk/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>awful adj</td>
<td>/ˈɒfl/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bargain n C</td>
<td>/ˈbærɪŋ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bloke n C</td>
<td>/bləʊk/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>branch n C</td>
<td>/ˈbræntʃ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>candle n C</td>
<td>/ˈkændəl/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>case n C</td>
<td>/keɪs/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>casual adj</td>
<td>/ˈkæʒuəl/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chain n C</td>
<td>/ˈʃeɪn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>client n C</td>
<td>/ˈklaɪənt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>department store n C</td>
<td>/dɪˈpɑːrtmənt stɔː/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>discrimination n U</td>
<td>/dɪˈskrɪmɪneɪʃən/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>electronic adj</td>
<td>/ɪˌlektroʊˈnɪk/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>employee n C</td>
<td>/ˈemplɔrɪ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enormous adj</td>
<td>/ɪˈnɔrməs/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>formal adj</td>
<td>/ˈfɔːrməl/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>furniture n U</td>
<td>/ˈfɜːnɪtʃər/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gold n U</td>
<td>/ɡəʊld/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hurry v</td>
<td>/ˈhʌri/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>image n C</td>
<td>/ˈɪmɪdʒ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impress v</td>
<td>/ɪmˈprɛs/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>incense n U</td>
<td>/ɪnsɛns/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instead (of) adv</td>
<td>/ɪnˈsted/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>investment n C</td>
<td>/ɪnˈvestmənt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jewellery n U</td>
<td>/ˈdʒuərəli/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>joke n C</td>
<td>/dʒəʊk/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>judge v</td>
<td>/dʒʊdʒ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>medium adj</td>
<td>/ˈmiːdɪəm/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mega-store</td>
<td>/ˈmeɡə stɔːr/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mum n C</td>
<td>/mʌm/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>overtime n U</td>
<td>/ˈɔvətmaɪm/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>professionalism n U</td>
<td>/profesʃənalɪˈzəm/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>recommend v</td>
<td>/rɪˈkəmend/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>roof n C</td>
<td>/ruːf/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sell out v</td>
<td>/sɛl ˈaut/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seriously adv</td>
<td>/ˈsteriəsli/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sexy adj</td>
<td>/ˈseksɪ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shape n C</td>
<td>/ʃeɪp/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sign v</td>
<td>/sɪŋ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>silver n C</td>
<td>/ˈsɪlvər/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>size n C</td>
<td>/saɪz/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spokeswoman n C</td>
<td>/ˈspəʊkswʊmən/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stall n C</td>
<td>/stəʊl/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>store n C</td>
<td>/stɔːr/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suitable adj</td>
<td>/ˈsjuːtəbl/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uniform n C</td>
<td>/ˈjuːnɪfɔːm/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wax n U</td>
<td>/ˈweɪks/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wheel n C</td>
<td>/wiːl/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
12A | Around the world

SPEAKING

1 Work in groups. Answer these questions.
- What do you know about the people below?
- Where did they come from?
- Why are they famous?
- What else do you know about them?

Christopher Columbus  
Jacques Cousteau  
Roald Amundsen  
Marco Polo

Compare your answers with another group.

2 Do you know of any explorers or adventurers from your country?

GRAMMAR: prepositions of movement

1 Match the prepositions in the box to the pictures A–H.

across along around into out of  
over past through

A B C D

E F G H

2 Choose the correct preposition to complete these sentences.

1 1434 The Portuguese explorer, Gil Eannes, was the first European to sail over / past Cape Bojador on the coast of Africa.
2 1492 Columbus first sailed across / along the Atlantic Ocean.
3 1522 Juan Sebastian del Cano became the first man to sail around / through the world.
4 around 1800 The Scottish explorer, Mungo Park, travelled on horse and on foot along / into the Niger River in West Africa.
5 around 1800 The German explorer, Alexander von Humboldt, travelled out of / through the Amazon jungle and collected plants.
6 1928 Amelia Earhart was the first woman to fly over / past the Atlantic Ocean.
7 1961 Yuri Gagarin was the first man to go across / into space.
8 1969 Neil Armstrong climbed around / out of his spaceship and became the first man on the Moon.

3 Describe your journey from home to school. Use as many prepositions of movement as possible.

I go out of my house and get into my car. I drive along Green Street ...
LISTENING

1. Listen to a news report about an American adventurer, Steve Fossett. Answer these questions.

1. What is the latest world record that he has broken?
2. Which of these activities has Steve Fossett not tried?
   - ballooning
   - dog racing
   - flying
   - space travel
   - long-distance swimming
   - speed sailing

2. Listen again and complete the sentences with the correct number.

1. Steve Fossett landed at Lake Yamma Yamma, which is ___ miles north of Sydney.
2. He has tried to fly around the world in a balloon ___ times.
3. The journey took him a little less than ___ days.
4. His journey began on June ___ at Northam in Western Australia.
5. His departure was delayed for ___ hours because of high winds.
6. He swam the Channel between France and England in ___.
7. In 2001, he sailed across the Atlantic in four days and ___ hours.
8. He holds the world gliding record for 500 and ___ kilometres.

3. For some people, Steve Fossett is a hero. Other people think that his achievements are a waste of time and money. What do you think?

VOCABULARY: phrasal verbs

1. Replace the words in italics with a phrasal verb from the box.

   called off  carried on  gave up  put off
   sorted out  took off

   1. Steve Fossett’s balloon left the ground from a town in Western Australia.
   2. He almost cancelled his attempt to fly round the world.
   3. He had to delay his departure because of a problem with the wind.
   4. He found a solution to his difficulties.
   5. He continued with his journey.
   6. He stopped ballooning after this journey.

   Look at tapescript 2.54 on page 146 to check your answers.

2. In these sentences, one of the words or phrases is not possible. Cross out the incorrect words.

   1. Unfortunately, the concert/weather/wedding was called off.
   2. Are you going to carry on seeing him/the Atlantic Ocean/with your studies?
   3. He has decided to give up his job/his wife/smoking.
   4. The decision/meeting/world was put off until next week.
   5. She needs to sort out her good health/money problems/relationship with her boss.
   6. The helicopter/plane/ship took off one hour late.

SPEAKING

1. Imagine that you have a ‘round the world’ plane ticket that allows you to make five stop-overs. Decide where you want to make the stop-overs.

2. Work in pairs. Compare your lists and decide on five places you both want to visit. Plan your route and decide what you are going to do in each place.

3. Tell the other students in your class what you are going to do.

   Our first stop-over is going to be Sydney. We want to go there to see the koalas and kangaroos and also to visit the Opera House.

   Who has planned the most interesting journey?
Let's dance

Speaking

1 Work in pairs. Discuss these questions.
- Which of these festivals have you heard of? What do you know about them?
  - Rio de Janeiro Carnival (Brazil)
  - Venice Carnival (Italy)
  - Las Fallas (Valencia, Spain)
  - Notting Hill Carnival (London, England)
  - Mardi Gras (New Orleans, USA)
- Which of these festivals would you most like to go to? Why?
- What festivals are there in your country? Which is the best?

Vocabulary & Reading: festivals

1 Match the words in the box to the pictures A–H.
- band
- costume
- fireworks display
- float
- parade/procession
- mask
- speakers
- traditional food

2 Read the email about a carnival in Trinidad. Which of the things in exercise 1 does the writer not mention?

---

Sunday
Early this morning, we had a telephone call from someone who knew Claire’s brother. His name was James. Did we want a guide, he asked. I wasn’t too sure, and half an hour later, James came to pick us up at our guest house. For lunch, he took us to a café that serves pelau – a traditional dish of rice and chicken. We also had our first bottle of Carib, the most popular beer here.
Later in the afternoon, we went to a soca competition. Soca is a kind of music which is played at carnival time. I loved it, but Claire was tired. Tomorrow is a big day, so we said goodbye to James.

Monday
Today is J’Ouvert – they pronounce it joo-vay. We woke up at 3 o’clock this morning because of the music that was coming from the street. Looking out of our upstairs window, we saw a float which was covered in speakers and, behind it, there were two or three hundred people. We got dressed. By this time, the procession was a lot bigger and we finally decided to join it behind another huge float with a steel band. There were thousands of people and they were all ‘wining’ – dancing real close to each other. Everyone is brown, because they cover themselves with dirt, mud, oil,!
We got back to Mrs Yorke’s at about 10 o’clock, took a quick shower, and changed into our costumes.

At 11, James arrived and took us to his Mas camp. All the bands in the carnival have a Mas camp, a place to practise and meet before the parades. Finally, our band took to the street.

Tuesday
Yesterday was just practice. Today, it is High Mas and this time it is for real. We joined James and his Mas camp early in the morning. I’ve never seen a bigger parade in my life. We danced until midday, but our feet were really hurting.
3 Read the email again and put the phrases a–g into the gaps 1–7.

a and even chocolate sauce
b and for the next four hours, we ‘wined’ and danced with James and his friends
c and wanted to get an early night
d so we found a place to watch
e and went downstairs to join the parade
f but Claire said yes
g and went back to the guest house

4 Look at the email again and say what these words refer to.
1 he (line 3) James
2 it (line 8) ______
3 it (line 11) ______
4 it (line 13) ______
5 us (line 20) ______

GRAMMAR: relative clauses

We can join two sentences with a relative pronoun (who, that, which).

He took us to a café. It serves pelau.
He took us to a café that serves pelau.

We use who for people, which for things, and that for both people and things.

The relative pronoun takes the place of he, she, it or they.

We had a phone call from someone who he knew Claire’s brother.
Soca is a kind of music which it is played at carnival time.

See Language Reference page 124

1 Replace that in the following sentences with who or which.

1 James was a Trinidadian that looked after us.
2 We were woken up by some music that was very loud.
3 They stayed in a guest house that was near the town centre.
4 We joined the people that were ‘wining’ behind the float.

2 Three of these sentences have a word which should not be there. Cross out the unnecessary words.

1 Pelau is a dish that it is made from rice and chicken.
2 Soca is a kind of music that started in the 1970s.
3 She went to a soca competition which it started in the afternoon.
4 The writer went to Trinidad with a friend who was from college.
5 They bought costumes that cost $250.
6 They stayed with a woman who she was very friendly.

3 Join the pairs of sentences to make one sentence with a relative clause.

1 Venice has a carnival. It is famous for its beautiful masks.
2 Belgium has an important festival. It takes place in Binche.
3 The summer festival in Verona is for music lovers. They like opera.
4 During the Rio carnival, the keys of the city are given to a man. He is called King Momo.
5 At Las Fallas, the people of Valencia make statues of famous people. They are burnt on the last night.
6 At Notting Hill in London, people wear costumes. They cost thousands of pounds.

SPEAKING

1 You are going to talk about a festival that you have been to. Before you speak, prepare your answers to these questions.
- Where and when did the festival take place?
- What does the festival celebrate?
- Does the festival have any special traditions (costumes, food, drink, music, dance, etc)?
- Who did you go to the festival with?
- How long did you stay?
- What did you do there?
- What did you like most and least about the festival?

2 Describe your festival to other students in the class and listen to their descriptions.
12c | Global English

**Speaking**

1. In your town, where can you find signs that are written in English? What do the signs say?
   Where can you hear people speaking English? Why is English used?

**Vocabulary: countries & languages**

1. Where are these cities?
   
   1. **Greece**
   2. Athens
   3. Budapest
   4. Sao Paolo
   5. Riyadh
   6. Tokyo
   7. Beijing
   8. Moscow
   9. Madrid
   10. Paris
   11. Rome
   12. Istanbul
   13. Warsaw

   Put the countries in order from 1–12 (1 = nearest to your country → 12 = furthest from your country).

2. Which languages are spoken in the countries in exercise 1? Write the languages in the correct place in the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ending in -an</th>
<th>ending in -ish</th>
<th>ending in -ese</th>
<th>with other endings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hungarian</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Can you add one more language to each column?

3. In how many different languages can you say hello?

4. Which of the languages in exercise 2 are the most widely-spoken in the world? Complete the list with the languages from exercise 2.

**The World's Most Widely-Spoken Languages**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Language</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Mandarin Chinese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Indian language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Hindi, Bengali, etc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. 🎧 2.57 Listen to the recording to check your answers.
English as an International Language – no problem, OK? 'You say to-may-to, I say to-mah-to'

The British and the Americans like to talk about the differences between British and American English. There are a few small differences in the grammar and there are a few words that are different on either side of the Atlantic, but the big difference is the accent. Some British films have subtitles in America because people can’t understand what the actors are saying, and some American TV series (The Sopranos, for example) are difficult for the British to understand.

However, if you listen to Standard English (the language that TV newscasters use, for example) in Britain or the US, there are no problems of understanding at all. The problems are with the different kinds of American and British English. These different dialects and accents depend on people’s social class and the geographical area where they live. It is possible, for example, that a middle-class speaker from the south of England will find it difficult to understand a working-class speaker from the north. In the same way, a wealthy Californian may not understand a working-class New Yorker. All of these people have accents, but the middle-class accents are usually closer to Standard English.

With so many different Englishes, it is difficult for learners of the language. What sort of English should they learn? Is American English better than British English, or the other way round? The answer depends on their reasons for learning English. If they are learning English for their work, the choice will probably be easy. But for many students, it doesn’t matter. What matters is that they understand and are understood.

The world is changing and English is no longer the property of the British, Americans or Australians. Most English that you hear and see around the world is spoken or written by non-native speakers – between, for example, a Greek and a German, or between a Russian and an Italian. English is the main language of business, academic conferences and tourism, of popular music, home computers and video games. English has become the Latin of the modern world.

Because of this, the question of American or British English is becoming less and less important. More and more people now talk about English as an International Language – a language that is not American or British. It has hundreds of different accents, but if people can understand what you are saying, no problem. OK?
SPEAKING & VOCABULARY: global issues

1 Match the newspaper headlines A–N to the global issue above.

A  LA children who cannot read
B  Police need more money to fight online crime
C  Protesters destroy fields
D  Brazil opens rainforest reserve
E  European Parliament to vote on minimum wage
F  NEW AIDS DRUG
G  Temperatures reach record high
H  Researchers find new flu virus
I  Who will save the Javan rhinoceros?
J  FOREST FIRES IN SOUTHERN FRANCE
K  Computer virus shuts down government websites
L  More teachers needed in Central city schools
M  Scientists clone 12 sheep
N  NEW HOSTELS FOR HOMELESS MEN

LISTENING

1  2.61–2.64 Listen to four conversations at a party. Which global issues above are discussed?

2  2.61–2.64 Listen to the conversations again to check your answers. Complete the sentences with a word from the box.

global warming homeless internet junk organic newspapers poor virus

Conversation 1
1  Mike has had a problem with a computer ___.
2  Bella thinks that the police should do more to stop ___ criminals.

Conversation 2
3  Mademoiselle Lajolie doesn’t want to eat ____ food.
4  Patrick thinks that ____ food is a waste of money.

Conversation 3
5  Ruby thinks life is very hard for the ____.
6  Davina thinks that everyone should give money to the ____.

Conversation 4
7  Stuart doesn’t care about ____.
8  Mary doesn’t believe everything in the ____

3  Which of the sentences in exercise 2 are true for you?

2 Work in pairs. Discuss these questions.
- Can you think of any other global issues?
- Which three issues are most important to you? Why?
- Which issues are important in your country at the moment?
- Do you know any stories in the news at the moment that are connected to these issues?
**FUNCTIONAL LANGUAGE: agreeing & disagreeing**

1. Complete the table with these phrases.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>agree</th>
<th>partly agree</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I agree with you.</td>
<td>I see your point, but ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1)</td>
<td>(4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2)</td>
<td>(5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>disagree</th>
<th>strongly disagree</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I'm afraid I disagree.</td>
<td>You can't be serious!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(6)</td>
<td>(8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(7)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. **2.65** Listen to the phrases and repeat.

3. Work in pairs. Complete and continue the conversation. Use as many of the phrases in exercise 1 as possible.

A: Have you heard the news about ____________? It’s terrible, isn’t it?
B: Yes, I agree with you. I think we should all do something about it.
A: ____________. But what?
B: ____________.

4. Look at these sentences and decide if you agree, partly agree, disagree or strongly disagree.

1. We should find solutions to our own problems before we try to help the rest of the world.
2. Women worry about the world’s problems more than men do.
3. Politicians will find solutions to the world’s problems.
4. There is nothing that I can do about the world’s problems.
5. It is the job of the United Nations (not national governments) to solve the world’s problems.

Work in small groups and compare your opinions.

**DID YOU KNOW?**

1. Look at the information about Oxfam.

   Work in pairs and discuss these questions.
   - What charities are there in your country?
   - What do these charities do?
   - Do you ever give money to charities? Which ones?

   **Oxfam International**

   Oxfam International is one of the world’s biggest charities. Oxfam’s aim is a simple one: to work with others to find lasting solutions to poverty and suffering.
   - Oxfam has programmes in more than 70 countries. It works with local people to improve their lives. Oxfam trains health workers and sets up schools, for example.
   - Oxfam responds to emergencies, providing food and shelter for people who have lost their homes in floods, hurricanes and war.
   - Oxfam speaks to governments and powerful organizations about the problems of poor people. It encourages people to speak for themselves and change their lives for the better.

   Oxfam was started in Oxford in 1942. It now has 3,000 partner organizations in 100 countries, including the US, Australia and many countries in Europe.
GRAMMAR
Prepositions of movement

How long does it take to sail across the lake?

They walked along the street until they found the restaurant.

The tour guide took them around the walls of the old city and back to their starting point.

Relative clauses

We can join two sentences with a relative pronoun (who, that, which).

We often go to a restaurant. It serves Chinese food.
We often go to a restaurant that serves Chinese food.

We use who for people, which for things, and that for both people and things. The relative pronoun takes the place of he, she, it or they.

Yesterday, I met someone who went to my old school.
Cheddar is a kind of cheese which is very popular in England.

The examples above are defining relative clauses. A defining relative clause identifies the thing that we are talking about. We do not use a comma before the relative pronoun in a defining relative clause.

FUNCTIONAL LANGUAGE
Agreeing & disagreeing

agree
I agree with you.
That’s how I feel, too.
That’s what I think, too.
Absolutely.
Definitely.

I see your point, but ...
I see what you mean, but ...

Well, maybe, but ...
I’m not sure about that.
I disagree, I’m afraid.
That’s not the way I see it.

You can’t be serious!
You must be joking!

disagree

He drove past my house but he didn’t stop.

It took a long time to go through passport control.
Global issues

clone n C/v /kləʊn/ 
crime n C/U *** /kraɪm/ 
environment n C/U *** /ɪnˈvʊərəmənt/ 
genetic engineering n U /dʒenətɪk /ɛnˈɡərɪnɪŋ/ 
genetically modified adj /dʒenətɪkəl /ˈmɔdɪfɪd/ 
global warming n U /ˈɡləʊbl wɔːrnɪŋ/ 
health n U *** /helθ/ 
homeless adj /həʊməˌliːz/ 
minimum wage n C /ˈmɪnɪməm/ 
nature conservation /ˈneɪtʃər kevərzn/ 
organic food /ˌɔrəɡəˈnɪk /fʊd/ 
poverty n U /ˈpəʊvəri/ 
promote n C /prəˈməʊt/ 
protestor n C /ˈprəʊtestər/ 
reform n C /ˌriːfɔːrm/ 

Other words & phrases

academic adj * /ækəˈdemɪk/ 
adventurer n C /ədˈventʃər/ 
aeroplane n C /eəˈrɒpliːn/ 
attempt n C ** /əˈtempt/ 
ballroom n C /ˈbɔːləm/ 
ballooning n U /bɑːˈlounɪŋ/ 
charity n C/U ** /ˈtʃærəti/ 
climatologist n C /klɪmətəˈlɔdʒɪst/ 
coast n C ** /ˈkɔust/ 
collect v *** /ˈkəlɛkt/ 
compare v *** /ˈkʌmpər/ 
delay v * /dɪˈleɪ/ 
dialect n C /dɪˈlekt/ 
dirt n U /dɜːt/ 
emergency n C ** /ɪˈmɜːʃən/ 
epic adj /ˈɛpɪk/ 
field n C *** /fɪld/ 
flood n C * /flɒd/ 
forest n C *** /ˈfɔːrɪst/ 
fortunate adj /fərˈtʃənət/ 
generous adj * /dʒenərəs/ 
geographical adj /ˌdʒɪzəˈgrɛfɪkəl/ 
glider n C /ˈɡlɪdər/ 
gliding n U /ˈɡlaidɪŋ/ 
guest house n C /ɡest hɔʊs/ 
guide n C ** /ɡuɪd/ 
handsome adj ** /ˈhændsəm/ 
helicopter n C /həlɪkəˈpɜːtər/ 
nicotine n U /ˈnɪkətn/ 
horse n C *** /hɔːs/ 
hostel n C /ˈhɒstl/ 
hurricane n C /ˈhɜːrknɪs/ 
middle-class adj /ˈmɪdəl ˈklɑs/ 

Countries & languages

Arabic /ærəˈbɪk/ 
Braz /brɔːz/ 
China /tʃən/ 
Chinese /tʃənizu/ 
France /frans/ 
French /frentʃ/ 
German /dʒɜːmən/ 
Greece /grɪs/ 
Greek /grɪk/ 
Hungarian /hʌŋˈɡərɪən/ 
Hungary /hʌŋɡɔrɪ/ 
Italian /ˈɪtəli/ 
Italy /ɪtəlɪ/ 
Japan /dʒapən/ 
Japanese /dʒapəˈnɪz/ 
Latin /lətən/ 
Poland /pɔlənd/ 
Polish /pɔlɪʃ/ 
Portugal /posˈtʃugɪz/ 
Portuguese /posˈtʃugɪz/ 
Russia /ˈrʌʃə/ 
Russian /rʌʃən/ 
Saudi Arabia /sɔːdi ˈəræbiə/ 
Spain /speɪn/ 
Spanish /spaɪn/ 
Turkey /tʃəki/ 
Turkish /tʃəki/ 

Festivals

band n C *** /bænd/ 
carnival n C /ˈkærnɪvl/ 
costume n C /ˈkɒstjʊm/ 
display n C ** /dɪˈspleɪ/ 
fireworks n plur /ˈfaɪəˌwɜːks/ 
float n C /fləʊt/ 
mask n C /mɑsk/ 
parade n C /pærəd/ 
procession n C /ˈpɜːrəsʃən/ 
(loud) speaker n C *** /ˈspiːkə/ 
mud n U /mʌd/ 
native speaker n C /ˈneɪtɪv ˈspiːkə/ 
newsreader n C /ˈnjuːzrɪdər/ 
ocean n C * /ˈseɪn/ 
tonion n C /ˈsənʃən/ 
opper n C/U /ˈɔpər/ 
politician n C ** /pəˈlɪtʃɪkən/ 
property n U *** /ˈprəʊprəti/ 
respond v *** /rɪˈspɒnd/ 
rhinoseros n C /ˈrɔrnəʊsərɔs/ 
sail v ** /sɔɪl/ 
sailing n U /ˈseɪliŋ/ 
soca /ˈsəʊkə/ 
social class /ˈsəʊʃl ˈklɑs/ 
solo adj/adv /ˈsəʊlo/ 
solution n C ** /səˈluʃn/ 
solve v /səlv/ 
speed n C/U *** /spiːd/ 
steel n C * /stɛl/ 
suffering n C/U /ˈsʌfərɪŋ/ 
virus n C * /ˈvɜːrəs/ 

wealthy adj /ˈweəθi/ 
working-class adj /ˈwɜːkɪŋ ˈklɑs/
Communication activities

4c Functional language exercise 1 page 41
Pair A
Read the story of this film twice and then close your books.

The Mask
Stanley Ipkiss is an ordinary guy who works in a bank. One day, a beautiful woman called Tina comes into his bank and he falls in love with her. But Tina works for a gangster who wants to rob the bank. She is not happy with the gangster and wants to leave him. Later that day, Stanley finds a mask in a river. When he puts the mask on, he has special powers. With these special powers, Stanley stops the gangster from robbing the bank. But the gangster gets Stanley’s mask and Stanley must help Tina without it. In the end, the gangster is killed and Stanley is a hero.

1b Speaking exercise 2 page 9
Student A
Read your information and use the questions in exercise 1 page 9 to find out about Christine’s other friends.

Click on name to send email
Helga Flint (née Eriksson) (born 1959)
I’m living in Finland with my partner, Chris, and my two children, Sally and Nicole (from my first marriage). I’m a teacher at an English school here. I would love to hear from old friends.

3A Speaking exercise 1 page 27
Student A
Read your rolecard and decide what you want to say to your flatmates.

You share a flat with the other students in your group. There are some problems in the flat and no one is happy.

You are studying for your exams and are very busy. You want to stop smoking but this is not a good time. In the evening, you want to go to bed early, but Student B has always got some friends in his room and they play music all night. You can’t sleep.

With your flatmates, make a list of four rules for the flat.
No smoking in the flat.

1d Functional language exercise 3 page 12
Student A
Write two more telephone numbers in column A. Dictate the numbers in column A to your partner. Then listen to your partner and write her/his numbers in column B.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td>015 33 30 00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c</td>
<td>02 513 23 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d</td>
<td>03273 177 711</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>03865 405700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td>00 44 207 3641</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Now check your answers with your partner.

11A Functional language exercise 2 Page 107
Take it in turns to choose one of the objects. Describe the object to your partner but do not say what it is. Your partner must guess which object you are describing.
1B Grammar exercise 4 page 9

Student B

Ask and answer questions with your partner to complete the missing information.

Christine Smith left school in 1976. She studied (1) What? at Leeds University and then got a job at (2) the United Nations in New York. When she was there, she met (3) Who? at the White House. He worked for (4) the British Embassy. They started going out together and they got married (5) When? They now have (6) seven children. Christine and her husband now live (7) Where? She works for (8) the International Red Cross and he is writing (9) What? Christine wants to get in touch with (10) old school friends and promises to reply to all emails.

2C Grammar exercise 2 page 21

Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions.

Picture A
1. Who was standing at the door?
2. Who was he looking at?
3. What was he wearing?
4. What were the students doing?

Picture B
1. Where was the teacher standing?
2. What was she holding?
3. Where was the boy with bond hair sitting?
4. How many students were taking the exam?

Picture C
1. What was the man at the door wearing?
2. What were the other people in the room wearing?
3. What was the man with the red tie holding?
4. What was the woman doing?

1B Speaking exercise 2 page 9

Student B

Read your information and use the questions in exercise 1 page 9 to find out about Christine’s other friends.

2C Speaking exercises 1 & 2 page 31

Complete column A with information about a town that you know. Do not choose your home town.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Town A</th>
<th>Town B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name of town</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cheap accommodation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restaurants</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nightlife</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parks and gardens</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Traffic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Public transport</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cinemas and theatres</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crime</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pollution</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ask questions about your partner’s town. Write the answers in column B.

3A Grammar exercise 3 page 27

Student A

Look at the picture. Then ask and answer questions with your partner to see how many differences you can find.

Charlie’s bedroom

9C Grammar exercise 3 page 91

Answers
1. Titanic
2. Men in Black
3. Moulin Rouge
4. E.T.
5. Ghandi
6. Harry Potter and the Chamber of Secrets
7. Gladiator
3A Speaking exercise 1  page 27

Student B
Read your rolecard and decide what you want to say to your flatmates.

You share a flat with the other students in your group. There are some problems in the flat and no one is happy.

There is never any food in the house. You often buy food, but you think that Student C eats it all. Student C never does any shopping! In fact, you spend more money than everybody else in the flat. It is time for others to pay.

With your flatmates, make a list of four rules for the flat.
No smoking in the flat.

4A Reading exercise 2  page 37

Student A
Read about Jay and tick (✓) the sentences on page 37 that are about him.

Jay
Age: 26
Occupation: primary school teacher

I am a quiet, friendly guy but I find it difficult to meet other people. My friends say I spend too much time on my own, but I don’t like going to clubs and bars. I like being on my own and I often prefer to stay at home and read, do yoga, think about life and listen to music. Music (Bach, Vivaldi, etc.) is the big love of my life and I often go to concerts at the weekend. I also enjoy long walks in the country, especially in the mountains. I would like to find someone to share those special moments and, maybe, to find love, too.

My perfect partner has the same interests as me. She is kind and romantic, warm and natural. She is open about everything and wants a man who has a lot of love to give. She’s a vegetarian and doesn’t smoke. For her, money is not important, and she enjoys the simple things in life. She likes children and maybe wants to have a family.

2B Grammar exercise 1  page 19

Answer: Pierce Brosnan

1D Functional language exercise 3  page 12

Student B
Write two more telephone numbers in column A. Listen to your partner and write her/his numbers in column B. Then dictate your numbers (in column A) to your partner.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a 911</td>
<td>a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b 02790 16 16</td>
<td>b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c 02 511 4529</td>
<td>c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d 03223 344323</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e 0800 60 800</td>
<td>e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f 00 1 245 44 45</td>
<td>f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g</td>
<td>g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>h</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Now check your answers with your partner.

6B Speaking exercise 2  page 58

Calculate your score.

Are You A Foodie?

1 a) 15 points  b) 10 points  c) 5 points
2 a) 5 points  b) 10 points  c) 15 points
3 5 points for each food item  a) 15 points  b) 10 points  c) 5 points

25–45 points  Champion foodie
You certainly like your food! You know what food is fashionable, you know the best food shops and you are happy in a kitchen. Your friends sometimes say that you should open a restaurant – and they are probably right.

50–75 points  Part-time foodie
You like the idea of cooking, but it’s sometimes easier to get something out of the freezer and put it in the microwave. You like going out to restaurants, especially when someone else pays. Food is important for you, but there are more important things in your life.

80–95 points  Fast foodie
You probably like traditional food, but your life is too busy for cooking or shopping for food. After all, what’s wrong with hot dogs and ice cream? You eat because you need to eat and you don’t care too much what it is.
7D Pronunciation exercise 2  page 73
Student A
Dictate the addresses in column A to your partner and write the addresses your partner dictates in column B.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><a href="http://www.bbc.co.uk">www.bbc.co.uk</a></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><a href="http://www.google.com">www.google.com</a></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><a href="http://www.geocities.com/index">www.geocities.com/index</a></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><a href="mailto:ruby.tuesday@hotmail.com">ruby.tuesday@hotmail.com</a></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><a href="mailto:marywhitehead@socksareus.net">marywhitehead@socksareus.net</a></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Now check your answers with your partner.

3A Speaking exercise 1  page 27
Student C
Read your rolecard and decide what you want to say to your flatmates.

You share a flat with the other students in your group. There are some problems in the flat and no one is happy.

You stay at home a lot because you do not have a job. The other people in the flat never do any housework. You do it all. There are never any clean glasses when you want a drink. You can’t hear the TV in the evening because Student B always listens to loud music.

With your flatmates, make a list of four rules for the flat. *No smoking in the flat.*

5b Functional language exercise 7  page 49
Student A
Roleplay 1
You are a passenger on a long-distance flight. You want to request some things from the flight attendant. Look at the ideas below and decide what you are going to say to the flight attendant.

- You would like: a newspaper/a magazine; a cup of coffee/can of Coke; a sandwich/packet of peanuts.
- You don’t know how to use the headphones.
- You feel cold.
- You want to sleep but you can’t close the window blind.

Roleplay 2
You are the passenger. Listen to what the flight attendant asks you to do.

1B Grammar exercise 4  page 9
Student A
Ask and answer questions with your partner to complete the missing information.

Christine Smith left school in 1976. She studied (1) business management at Leeds University and then got a job at (2) Where? ______. When she was in America, she met (3) Adam at a party at the White House. He worked for (4) What? ______. They started going out together and they got married (5) two years later. They now have (6) How many? ______ children. Christine and her husband now live (7) in West London. She works for (8) What? ______ and he is writing (9) his second novel. Christine wants to get in touch with (10) Who? ______ and promises to reply to all emails.
**4A Reading exercise 2  page 37**

**Student B**

Read about Pete and tick (√) the sentences on page 37 that are about him.

**Pete**

**Age:** 35  
**Occupation:** airline pilot

I am divorced. I have a daughter, but she lives with her mother in Australia, so I only see her from time to time. Because of my work, I am often away from home. I’m a very active person and I hate being bored. I play five-a-side football every Thursday evening and I play golf twice a month. I love old motorcycles (I’ve got a 1961 Moto Guzzi), music (Pink Floyd, Phil Collins, etc), skiing, good restaurants, fine wines and Havana cigars. Life is busy and full, but without love, it’s also empty.

My perfect partner is intelligent, attractive and – most important of all – she is fun to be with. She likes some of the things that I like, but she also has a life of her own. She likes her work and she has lots of friends, but she wants more from life. I have so much to give – do you want to share my life with me?

**4B Grammar exercise 3  page 39**

Prepare five questions with the present continuous about the picture. Then close your books and ask your partner the questions.

**6B Grammar exercise 3  page 59**

Look at pictures A and B. How many differences can you find? Use the adjectives in the box to help you.

- beautiful  - big  - cheap  - clean  - cold  - dirty  - early  - expensive  - happy  - late  - long  - old  - short  - small  - tall  - young  - warm

*The customers are older in picture A.*

**3A Speaking exercise 1  page 27**

**Student D**

Read your rolecard and decide what you want to say to your flatmates.

You share a flat with the other students in your group. There are some problems in the flat and no one is happy.

When you got home yesterday, there was cigarette smoke in your room. You hate smoking! And there were some empty bottles of beer on the table. Who was smoking and drinking in your room? And why in your room? Student A is the only smoker in the house.

With your flatmates, make a list of four rules for the flat.

*No smoking in the flat.*
5B Functional language exercise 7  page 49
Student B
Roleplay 1
You are a flight attendant. Help the passenger.

Roleplay 2
You are a flight attendant. One of your passengers is very difficult. Look at the ideas below and decide what you are going to say to the passenger. Remember to be polite.
- The passenger is using her/his mobile phone which is not allowed during the flight.
- The passenger is snoring loudly and disturbing other passengers.
- The passenger is listening to very loud music on headphones and disturbing other passengers.
- The passenger has her/his legs stretched out in the aisle so it is difficult for people to pass.

7c Grammar exercise 3  page 70
Student A
Look at the Things to do list. Ask your partner questions.

Have you ... yet?

Don’t forget!
Check the mailbox
Write to the bank
Call the boss
Get some more paper
Speak to Trevor (in the Personnel dept.)
Do last week’s accounts
Arrange a meeting with Sue & David
Read the horoscope!

1B Speaking exercise 2  page 9
Student D
Read your information and use the questions in exercise 1 page 9 to find out about Christine’s other friends.

Click on name to send email
Philip Jones (born 1959)
I’m living in London with my wife, Alison. We run a TV production company and we are making a film about old school friends and the internet. Do you want to be in the film? We can pay £500 to everybody we interview. If interested, please send an email as soon as possible.

4c Functional language exercise 1  page 41
Pair B
Read the story of this film twice and then close your books.

My Best Friend’s Wedding
Julianne and Michael are old friends. They agree to get married when they are 28 years old if they don’t meet anyone else. Just before Julianne’s 28th birthday, they speak on the telephone and Michael tells Julianne that he is in love with a girl called Kimmy and he’s going to get married. The wedding is in four days. Julianne suddenly realizes that she is in love with Michael and she tries to stop the wedding. But everything she does goes wrong and Julianne realizes that Kimmy is really nice and that she is right for Michael. The film ends with Michael and Kimmy getting married.

3A Speaking exercise 1  page 27
Student E
Read your rolecard and decide what you want to say to your flatmates.

You share a flat with the other students in your group. There are some problems in the flat and no one is happy.

Two weeks ago you lost some CDs in the house. Now, you can’t find your favourite DVD. Is someone borrowing your things? You know that Student C sometimes borrows things without asking.

With your flatmates, make a list of four rules for the flat. No smoking in the flat.

7d Pronunciation exercise 2  page 73
Student B
Dictate the addresses in column A to your partner and write the addresses your partner dictates in column B.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><a href="http://www.cnn.com">www.cnn.com</a></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><a href="http://www.onestopenglish.net/">www.onestopenglish.net/</a></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><a href="mailto:kerrphilip@macmillan.com">kerrphilip@macmillan.com</a></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><a href="mailto:r.dailly@doncaster.ac.uk">r.dailly@doncaster.ac.uk</a></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>straightforward</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><a href="http://www.aol.co.uk/msgview.adp">www.aol.co.uk/msgview.adp</a></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Now check your answers with your partner.
4A Reading exercise 2  page 37
Student C
Read about Carl and tick (✔) the sentences on page 37 that are about him.

Carl
Age: 30
Occupation: unemployed

I lost my job (in a merchant bank) six months ago and thought it was the end of the world. I used to live for my work, all day and every day. I never had time for girlfriends! But now I am a different man. I don’t have much money, but for the first time in my life I enjoy everything I do. I have new friends, new interests – it is a new me. I like being with other people, I love children and I would love to have a family. I love the country, the sea, the outdoors. I don’t really like being in the city these days – I prefer to be with friends in the country, outdoors in the fresh air.

My perfect partner is open and kind. She likes being with other people and she enjoys lots of different things. She doesn’t work too much and money is not very important: family and friends take first place. She wants a partner to share her life, but she is not in a hurry. Like me, she doesn’t want to repeat the mistakes of the past.

7c Grammar exercise 3  page 70
Student B
Look at the Things to do list. Answer your partner’s questions.

Yes, I have. No, I haven’t. No, not yet.

Don’t forget!
Check the mailbox ✔
Write to the bank
Call the boss
Get some more paper ✔ yes
Speak to Trevor (in the Personnel dept.)
Do last week’s accounts
Arrange a meeting with Sue & David
Read the horoscope! ✔ done!
1A Speaking exercise 1 1.1

The Joneses are a typical English family. Mother Sally is 35 and she is a part-time secretary. Father Mike is 37 and works in an office. Sally is very busy with her job and the housework, so she doesn’t have time for any hobbies. Mike likes doing things in the garden and repairing things in the house, but he sometimes goes to the pub with his friends. They have two children: Jason, who is seven and likes football and video games, and his sister, Jane, who is six, and likes playing with her Barbie dolls. They have a cat called Snowy.

There is no work or school on Saturdays and the family usually goes somewhere for the day – a walk in the country or a day at the beach. On Sundays, they visit friends and family. In the summer, they go on holiday to Spain for two weeks.

The family has dinner together at half-past six. The children’s favourite dinner is chicken and chips, but Sally prefers spaghetti. On Sundays, they always have traditional roast beef or roast lamb. Sally cooks and Mike cuts the meat.

After dinner, they watch TV. They enjoy comedy programmes and soap operas and they always watch the Lottery results. One day they will win and move to a bigger house.

1B Listening exercise 3 1.3

C = Christine  A = Adam

A: Oh look at those red shoes! Hmm, cool ...
C: What are you looking at, Adam? Why are you laughing?
A: And that lovely flowery dress. Love-ly.
C: Give me that. Where did you find it?
A: It was in this box.
C: Oh God, I look terrible.
A: No, you don’t. You look lovely.
C: And look at Susan. Next to me on the floor.
A: Susan who?
A: Susan! That’s Susan? Never! How old were you?
C: I remember it well. It was 1973 – it was the year that Pink Floyd made Dark Side of the Moon. That’s what we were singing! 1973 – it’s more than thirty years ago! I was fifteen, and Susan, what, thirteen probably. Maybe twelve.
A: And who’s the boy with the guitar and the lovely pink shirt? Boyfriend?
C: No. N.O. That’s Nicholas, and he wasn’t a boyfriend. He wasn’t a friend. Well, maybe a friend of the family, but he wasn’t a friend of mine. And anyway, Helga was Nicholas’ girlfriend. That’s her with the blonde hair. She was really in love with him. I could never understand it.
A: Helga? That’s a funny name.
C: Yes, she was Swedish. Or her parents were Swedish. She was my best friend at the time. We did everything together.

A: Well, who was your boyfriend? Was it the boy in the yellow shirt?
C: Why do you want to know?
A: Well, I am your husband.
C: Hmm. I’ll tell you later. I wonder where they all are now.
A: What do you mean?
C: I mean, Nicholas and Richard and Helga and him, what’s his name, the one in the blue shirt, Philip, that was it. I mean, you know, where do they live? What do they do? Are they married, that sort of thing.
A: Well, there’s one way to find out.
C: What do you mean?
A: Look on the internet. Your old school has probably got a website. Maybe it’s got some information about all these old friends of yours.
C: Hey, that’s a good idea. What’s the name of that website? Old Friends United or something like that ...

1D Functional language 1 exercise 1 1.10

M = Message  K = Kate

M: Thank you for calling Sayers Recruitment and Training. To listen to the menu, please press the star button on your telephone now. Thank you. For general enquiries, press 1 followed by hash. For business callers, press 2 followed by hash. To make an appointment with a careers adviser, press 3 followed by hash. Thank you. You have reached the voicemail of:

K: Kate Woods

Hi, this is Kate Woods. I’m not in the office today, but you can call me at home on 3207 7 double 5 3046 or on my mobile 04 double 7 3201 double 8. That’s 0307 7 double 5 3046 at home or 04 double 7 3201 double 8 for the mobile. You can also leave a message after the beep. Thanks.

1D Listening exercises 1 & 2 1.11–1.14

1  M = Message  D = Davina

M: This is 641480. I’m afraid there’s no one to take your call right now. Please leave your name and number after the tone and I’ll call you back.

D: Ah, yes, hello. Mr Trotter, my name is Davina and I’m, I’m interested in your, erm, advertisement. Could you call me back, please? Any time before 6 o’clock. The number is 0870 double 4 6091. Ask for Davina. Bye.

2  M = Message  B = Bella

M: Stuart here. I’m not home at the moment, so please leave a message after the beep.

B: Hello, good morning. This is Bella Moor, that’s Moor, M- double O-R. I’m calling about the Kung Fu classes. You can call me back on my mobile, that’s 0 double 47 3958 double 2. But I’ll try to call you again later.
Re: Sayers Recruitment and Training. Can I help you?
R: Hello, yes, erm, I’m, er, I saw your advert and I’m looking for a job, I mean, I’m interested in a new job, and...
Re: Ah, yes, you need to speak to Mrs Sayers, but I’m afraid she’s not in the office right now. Could I take your name and number and I’ll ask her to call you back?
R: Er, yes, yes, Er, the name’s Ruby, Ruby Tuesday and my number is 0308 double 5 71919.
Re: Thank you, Miss Tuesday. I’ll pass on your message.
R: Thanks. Bye.
Re: Goodbye.

**4** M = Message  S = Sara

M: This is 727 23 double 7. I’m afraid there is no one to take your call right now. Please leave your name and number after the beep and I’ll call you back.
S: Oh, hello. This is a message for Mary Sharp. I’m interested in having English lessons because I need to prepare for an exam in Spain. Can you call me back? Some time this afternoon before six? My name is Sara and my number is 0308 3 double 4 7031.

**2A** Listening exercises 1 & 2  1.16–1.18

1 Mr Miller taught biology and everybody, well, all the girls anyway, we all loved him. I was afraid of lots of the teachers, but with Mr Miller it was completely different. I was really fond of him, maybe a little more than fond, actually. He really cared about his students, you know what I mean? He was really interested in us, in us as people I mean, not just as students. We never missed his lessons. Well, the girls never missed his lessons, but some of the boys weren’t very keen on him. I always got good grades in his classes and, you know what? When I left school, he helped me find my first job.

2 I didn’t like my school at all. I was terrible at most subjects, but I was good at art. The teachers said I was stupid, but it wasn’t true. They had a special class for all the difficult pupils and they put me in it. We were bored and we hated it. The teachers weren’t interested in us, but we didn’t worry about them. When I was sixteen, I took my exams and failed most of them – because I never worked in class and I didn’t do my homework. We talked and played, and I only studied for one week before the exams. But I passed art. It was the only subject I was interested in. I’m a painter now. When people buy your pictures, they don’t care if you have any exams or not.

3 I didn’t really like school very much, but Fridays were OK. Friday was music day and I was good at music. I played the guitar and I sang well, but then everyone liked music lessons. One year, it was my last year at school, we had a new teacher and it was even better. Brilliant, I thought. The new teacher was young and we listened to rap and hip-hop. In the summer term we made a CD and we did a concert for the school. You know what, it was such fun that I didn’t want to leave school.

**2b** Listening exercises 1 & 3  1.23

B = Bella  P = Patrick  ML = Mlle Lajolice

B: Good afternoon. Bonjour. Can I help you?
P: Er, yes. Bonjour. Please could I have some information about your school?
B: Certainly, sir. What would you like to know?
P: Well, could you tell me about your courses? I mean, for example, how many students are in a class?
B: There are fifteen students in a class. We have day-time classes and evening classes. And all our teachers are native French speakers. Do you speak any French?
P: Er, oui. Un petit peu.
B: Pardon?
P: Er, yes, well, my accent isn’t very good. I think that I’m probably a beginner, actually. Do you have classes for beginners in the evenings?
B: Yes, our beginners’ class is on Tuesdays and Thursdays.
P: Tuesdays and Thursdays?
B: Yes, that’s right. Tuesdays and Thursdays.
P: And what time are the classes?
B: Between eight o’clock and half-past nine.
P: I see. And, um, how long does the course last?
B: It’s a ten-week course. It starts next Tuesday. Actually, I’m in the class myself.
P: You’re in the class? Jolly good, jolly good. And the teacher?
B: The teacher? Oh, yes, the teacher. It’s Mademoiselle Lajolice. That’s her over there.
P: Oh, excellent, excellent. Bonjour.
ML: Quais, bonjour.
P: Oh, jolly good, jolly good. Erm, are there any social activities?
B: Oh yes, we have our French club on Friday evenings.
P: Marvellous. Good, well, um, is there a registration form or something? Oh, I almost forgot. How much are the course fees?
B: It’s one hundred and fifty pounds for the ten weeks. And here’s the registration form ...

**3A** Listening exercises 2 & 3  1.26

A = Ali  C = Charlie

A: Hey, Charlie, do you have any time this week when I can come and look at your flat?
C: Yeah, what about this afternoon? There’s nothing to eat in the flat, so I’m going to the shops on the way home to get some food.
A: Pizzas again?
C: No, I want to get some bread and some cheese, actually. Anyway, why don’t you come with me and look at the flat after that?
A: Yeah, all right. Good idea.
C: So, things are still difficult at home? Still the same problems?
A: Er, well, yes and no. Things are worse. There’s a new problem now. We’ve got twin cousins from London staying with us at the moment. They’re sleeping in the room with me and my brothers. Fourteen-year-old twins!
C: Grim.
A: Yeah, and I've got some exams in a week or two. I get no peace and I can't do any work. It's driving me mad. Driving me mad. Maaaaadddd.
C: Yeah, all right. Why don't you ask them to go to another room?
A: I can't ask my brothers to leave their own room!
C: No, not your brothers – your cousins. The fourteen-year-old cousins.
A: Oh, yeah? Ask some guests to leave the room! Oh, definitely, my parents will be very happy. Anyway, there's no space in the house. My mum's always in the living room watching TV. And I can't do my homework in there with the TV on.
C: Well, you know my flat's not very big. And there are five of us already! No peace there, I'm afraid. The library is the best place to work. Stay in the library after college and work there. We don't go to bed early and, well, I don't want to put you off ...
A: No, it's not just that. I can't have any friends in my house. I get no independence. I mean, I love my mum and dad, but I think it's time to move.
C: And you really want to move in with us? I mean, we're happy to have you, but it's only a sofa in the living room. Oh, by the way, the kitchen's a bit dirty. I think it's my turn to do the housework. Haven't you got any better ideas for a place to stay?
A: No. Anyway, let's get that food.
C: Yeah, OK. Oh, have you got any cash on you? Money is a bit of a problem at the moment.

3d Functional language exercise 1 (1.28–1.30)
1 Tony: Right, we're in front of the castle. What did that old woman say?
Stuart: Can't remember. Come on, Tony. Let's ask someone. 'Scuse me, how do I get to the stadium, please?
Man 1: The stadium? What, St James' Park?
Stuart: Yeah, that's right.
Man 1: Ah well, you go straight on ...
Stuart: What, over the bridge?
Man 1: No, no, turn round and go straight on. Take the first street on the right and go past the station ...
Stuart: But the station is the other way!
Man 1: Who lives here, you or me?
Stuart: Yeah, all right.
Man 1: So, you go past the station. Go straight on for about ten minutes. And that's it. About ten minutes after the station.

2
Stuart: Let's ask someone else.
Tony: Yeah, all right. 'Scuse me, can you tell me the way to the stadium?
Man 2: (Incomprehensible)
Stuart: Oh, thanks, mate.
Tony: What did he say?
Stuart: No idea! Difficult accent here, isn't it? Let's ask someone else.

3
Stuart: 'Scuse me, can you tell me the way to the stadium, please? Do we cross the bridge?
Woman: Cross the bridge? No, it's the other way. Go to the end of the road, straight on, straight on. You go past four, five, maybe six crossroads, and then you'll see the shopping centre on the right. And there's a church on the left. Take the first street on the left after the church. Go straight on. Go past the bus station and there's a metro station on the right. And the stadium is there. Well, more or less. You'll see it.
Tony: Did you get that, Stuart?
Stuart: Er, yeah, I think so.
### 4C Listening exercises 1 & 2  1.37

OK, well, there's this guy, Joe, Joe Fox, and he's a really successful businessman. He's the boss of a big, I mean really big, bookshop in New York and he spends a lot of time on the internet, you know, chatting and stuff. And there's this woman, Kathleen, and she also works in the book business, but she's got this really nice little bookshop in New York that just sells children's books. Kathleen is going out with a guy, erm, I can't remember his name ...

Anyway, she's going out with this guy and he writes for the newspaper, he's a journalist or something. But she spends a lot of time on the internet, too, and she's met this other guy in an internet chatroom, but she doesn't know his real name or anything about him, but they seem to have a lot in common and they get on really well. But this guy that she's met on the internet is ... it's Joe Fox, but she doesn't know who he is and vice versa. Anyway, Fox's Books, that's Joe Fox's company, opens this huge new bookstore just around the corner from Kathleen's shop and they sell books much cheaper than Kathleen's shop, so her business quickly gets into trouble. The two of them, Kathleen and Joe, meet at a party and they have an argument about business. Yeah, they have an argument but he quite likes her, although he doesn't really think about it because he's thinking too much about this woman that he chats to on the internet. Anyway, Kathleen's business goes really badly and the bookshop has to close. So she feels really bad, and she's ill, she's got a cold, and she splits up with her boyfriend on the same day.

Her boyfriend tells her that he's not in love her, but it doesn't really matter because she's not in love with him either. Then Joe goes to visit Kathleen with a bunch of flowers because she's ill, but she tells him to go away, yes, she tells him to go away, but they talk a bit anyway, and they seem to get on quite well. On the internet, Kathleen still talks to the guy on the internet and they finally arrange to meet. So, one evening, she's sitting in a café waiting for him and he arrives, but when he sees that the woman who is waiting for him is Kathleen, he doesn't want to tell her that it's him, the guy on the internet. So, Joe now knows that Kathleen is the woman on the internet and he's really crazy about her, but she doesn't know who he is, and she still wants to meet her internet friend. So, it sort of carries on like that for a bit until she starts to fall in love with him, and then he finally tells her that he's her internet friend, and they're in the park, and they kiss, and, well, that's it. And they both live happily ever afterwards. Of course.

### 4D Listening exercises 1 & 2  1.40 – 1.41

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>P</th>
<th>Trotter here.</th>
<th>D</th>
<th>Davina.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>Oh, hello, Patrick. It's Davina.</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>Pardon?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>I'm sorry ...</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>Davina. Davina Sayers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>Ah, Davina. Sorry, very bad line. I must get a new phone.</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>Well, yes, erm, I was just ringing to say thank you for a lovely evening. Marvelous. Thank you so much.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. **Listening exercises 2 & 3**

**5B**

**1. C = Check-in assistant  M = Mike**

C: Good afternoon, sir.

M: Morning. Oh, yeah, right, sorry, afternoon. Sorry, but I can’t find my ticket. It’s here somewhere. Hang on. Ah, here it is. Sorry about that.

C: Could I see your passport, please?

M: Yes, sure. I’ve got it somewhere. Here you are.

C: Thank you. That’s fine. Do you have any bags to check in?

M: Er, no, no. Er, just this. Erm, excuse me, but I wonder if I could have a seat next to the window.

C: Er, yes, certainly. 23A. That’s a window seat.

M: Oh, right. Thanks a lot.

C: You’re welcome. Your plane is boarding in, erm, fifteen minutes at twelve-thirty. Fifteen minutes! You’re a bit late – so no time for shopping, I’m afraid. It’s departure gate 41. Have a nice flight.

M: Oh, yeah, right, thanks. Bye.

C: Goodbye now.

**2. S = Security guard  M = Mike**

S: Can you put any money or keys or mobile phone here, please, sir, and walk through the gate?

M: Sorry, what? Pardon?

S: Metal objects here, please.

M: Oh, right, yeah. The phone, too?

S: Yes, sir.

M: Sure. Sorry, I’m in a bit of a hurry.

M: Oh, no! Now what?

S: Can you stand over here and put your arms like that, please?

M: Oh, come on, I’m in a hurry. I’ve only got five minutes.

S: It’s the Dublin flight, is it, sir?

M: Yeah, come on, we’re not on a date.

S: Could you empty your inside pockets, please, sir?

M: Oh, it’s my other set of keys. Here.

S: Put them on the desk there, please. Give me your jacket and then, can you walk through the gate again one more time?

M: Yup, OK, here you are. Oh, no! Not again.

S: I’m sorry, sir, but please stay calm. Could you put your hands in the air for me, please?

M: Oh, it’s this comb. What’s the time?

S: I’m afraid you can’t take that comb on the plane, sir. It’s a dangerous object.

M: What! Oh, well, you keep it.

3. **F = Flight attendant  M = Mike  B = Bella**

F: Would you like anything to drink?


F: Certainly, sir. And for you, madam?

B: Just a glass of water for me, please.

F: Certainly, madam. That will be four euros fifty, please, sir.

M: It’s not free? Oh, right. Right. Well, here you are. I’d like to have a receipt, please.

F: I’m afraid that we don’t do receipts, sir. Here’s your water, madam.

B: Many thanks.

M: Pardon?

F: I’m sorry, but we don’t do receipts, sir.

M: Never mind. Ugh, horrible. That’s not coffee. That’s disgusting. Excuse me, can I get past? I need to go to the, er, you know, the, er, the ...

B: The toilet? Sorry. Of course.

M: Sorry.

B: Whoops, oh mind the coffee!

M: Aaaaah!

B: Everything OK now?

M: Yeah, thanks. I’m sorry about that. It’s just, it’s just, well, you know, I get very nervous in planes. Do you mind if we talk? It helps if I can talk to someone. You know what I mean? I mean, if you don’t mind. You look like the sort of person who understands.

**5c Listening exercises 2 & 3**

**Presenter:** Welcome to *The Holiday Programme*. Today, we continue our search for the Worst Hotel in Britain. In this programme, we look at the King Edward Hotel. Last year it was voted the worst hotel in Britain for service, cleanliness and facilities. Will the King Edward Hotel be the worst again this year? We sent our reporters, Nicki and Gavin Becks, for a weekend in Brighton to find out.

**Nicki:** We arrived in Brighton on Friday evening and drove straight to the King Edward Hotel. A big sign in the front window said ‘Vacancies’. We rang the bell and waited. After about five minutes, the door finally opened and the manager appeared.

**Manager:** Yes?

**Gavin:** Hello. We’d like a double room for two nights, please.

**Manager:** It’s late. Wait there and I’ll see.

**Nicki:** It wasn’t the friendliest welcome, but a few minutes later, a woman came to the door.

**Woman:** It’s sixty pounds a night. No credit cards and you need to pay in advance.

**Gavin:** That’s fine, fine. Here you are. Can we see the room?

**Woman:** I’ll get the key. Hang on. Room 51, fifth floor. On the right.
Gavin: Fine, thank you. Is that the lift over there?
Woman: It’s not working at the moment. The stairs are through that door.
Gavin: Never mind. We’ll walk.
Nicky: The room itself was not too bad. There was a good view of the sea from the window, the bathroom was small but clean and the bed looked clean and comfortable.
Gavin: We had a quick (cold) shower and got changed to go out for the evening. We walked downstairs and gave our key to the woman at reception.
Woman: Everything all right?
Nicky: Yes, the room’s fine. The shower’s cold, but ...
Woman: Oh, yes, I forgot about the shower. I’ll ask my husband to fix it this evening.
Gavin: That’s kind of you. Thanks.
Woman: What time are you coming back this evening?
Nicky: I’m not sure. We’re going to see a film and then maybe get something to eat afterwards. Why?
Woman: We close the doors at eleven o’clock.
Gavin: Eleven o’clock?
Woman: Yes, the front door is locked at eleven o’clock.
Nicky: We were happy to get out of the hotel. Brighton is a lively town on a Friday night and after the cinema, we had a few drinks in the old part of town before returning to the hotel. We got there at two minutes past eleven, and the door was locked. We rang and rang and, after fifteen minutes with no answer, we finally decided to give up and look for another hotel. Fortunately, there were vacancies at the Grand Hotel, which was only five minutes away.
Gavin: The next morning after a hot shower, we returned to the King Edward Hotel. The manager was standing outside the front door when we arrived. Who do you think you are, he shouted. Waking up all the guests in the middle of the night! Next time you do that, I’ll call the police.
Nicky: It won’t happen again, I said. We’re going to stay at another hotel, thank you very much. At that, the man, who was holding our bags threw them at us. We picked up the bags and returned to the Grand. Now, there’s a hotel that we liked ...
Presenter: Thank you, Nicky and Gavin. It certainly sounds as if the King Edward Hotel could win the competition for a second year. Let’s wait and see. Next in the programme ...

6b Listening exercises 1 & 2  1.50

J = Jilly  M = Maura

J: Today, on the second day of our tour of Italy, we are in Bologna. Bologna, the capital of Emilia-Romagna perhaps the food capital of Italy, with its parmesan cheese, Parmigiano, Parma ham, mmm, Parma ham, its lasagne and tortelloni. Mmm. But if you come to Bologna hoping to eat Spaghetti Bolognese, traditional, authentic spag bol, you will be disappointed. No Spaghetti Bolognese in Bologna? I must know more. I’m standing here in Bologna’s main market and with me is Maura Giuliani, an expert on Italian food. Maura, why is there no Spaghetti Bolognese in Bologna?
M: Well, we have a dish called Tagliatelle al Ragu, and the sauce is very similar to the sauce you call Bolognese. But we use tagliatelle, not spaghetti. Spaghetti comes from the south of Italy and we do not use it here. We do not eat Spaghetti Bolognese in Bologna – strange but true.
J: Well, fancy that!
M: And the sauce called ‘Bolognese’ that you buy in a bottle from your supermarket is even stranger!
J: In what way?
M: It is strange because it is made by strange men in white coats in strange laboratories. Their recipe is extremely complicated and very secret. It contains tomatoes from all over the world. It’s got salt and sugar, lots of salt and sugar, chemicals, preservatives, artificial flavours. It’s got chemical tomato flavour, chemical meat flavour and artificial colour. And what is in the flavours? Chemicals and more chemicals. When we make Ragu sauce at home, we use local, fresh ingredients that do not travel millions of miles before they go in your mouth. We make a simpler, more traditional recipe. It is healthier for you. And it tastes better. A lot better. But, and there is a but, is it slower to prepare. Good food is slow food.
J: Yes, absolutely. I understand that you call yourself a ‘slow foodie’. What exactly does that mean?
M: Slow food is a movement that started in Italy back in 1986, but now has members in about 50 countries. Who are we? Well, it’s quite difficult to say because all sorts of people are slow foodies. It’s easier to say who we are not.
J: And you are not ...
M: We’re not McDonalds or Pizza Hut. We’re not pasta sauce in a bottle. We’re not a quick hamburger and chips for dinner. We think food is more important and more interesting than that. We’re interested in making food more enjoyable, more traditional, better, slower. You can’t really taste anything if you eat it fast.
J: Maura, thanks. Looking at the food on sale at the market here is making my mouth water. Mmmm. There’s a man over there selling some of those, what do you call them, um, those little balls of rice. I think I will eat some of them very, very, very slowly. After the market, Maura took us to a demonstration of pasta making.

6d Listening exercises 1 & 2  1.53

P = Patrick  W = waiter

P: Ah, Ah.
W: Hello. La Vie en Rose. Can I help you?
P: Er, yes, good afternoon. I’d like to book a table for ten, please.
W: Oh dear, I’m afraid our last booking is at half-past nine, sir.
P: No, no, no. Not ten o’clock. Ten people. I’d like a table for ten people on Friday at nine o’clock.
W: Oh, I'm sorry sir, silly me. Of course, of course. Ten people on Friday at nine o'clock. We all make mistakes, don't we?

P: Yes, that's right.

W: Yes, well, I'm afraid we don't have a table for ten, actually. We don't do big tables, I'm afraid. Do you know the restaurant? It's very intimate. I could put you on three smaller tables. There's a very romantic table for two next to the window, and two tables for four behind that.

P: Oh, well, that sounds marvellous. The name's Trotter. Patrick Trotter. I'll have the table in the window. The teacher and I. It's our French class's annual meal. We're going to practise our French. Hmm, yes, and the rest of the class on the other tables. Yes, perfect. Marvellous.

W: So, that's two tables for four and a romantic table for two on Friday at nine o'clock?

P: Yes, that's right.

W: Is that smoking or non-smoking, sir?

P: Non-smoking. Yes, non-smoking. And the name is Trotter.

W: Pardon?


W: Oooh, Major!

P: Er, well, retired major, actually.

W: We look forward to seeing you on Friday night.

P: Yes, jolly good. See you on Friday, then.

W: By-eee.

P: Marvellous.

6d Functional language 1 exercise 2 1.54

W = Waiter  ML = Mme Lajolie

W: Hello. La Vie en Rose. Can I help you?

ML: Yes, good afternoon. I'd like to book a table for Friday, please.

W: Certainly, madam. For how many people?

ML: It's for ten people.

W: I'm afraid we don't have any large tables ...

ML: Yes, I know. I've been before. Two or three smaller tables will be fine. If they're together ...

W: Yes, well, let me see, we're quite busy on Friday. We've got another party of ten at nine o'clock. What time would you like, madam? Is seven o'clock too early?

ML: Seven o'clock? No. That's fine.

W: So, seven o'clock for ten people. Could I take your name, please, madam?


W: Well, we look forward to seeing you on Friday.

ML: Yes, thank you. Goodbye.

W: By-eee.

6d Functional language 2 exercises 1 & 2 1.57

W = Waiter  ML = Mme Lajolie  B = Bella

S1 = Student 1  S2 = Student 2

W: Good evening, madam. Welcome to La Vie en Rose.

ML: Good evening. The name is Lajolie. I have a reservation for ten people. One person isn't here yet. Er, can you show him our tables when he arrives?

W: Certainly, madam. Let me show you to your tables. It's this way.

ML: Thank you.

W: It's these three tables here.

ML: Very nice. Bella, shall we sit at that table?

B: Yes, OK.

W: Can I take your coats?

B: Yes, thanks.

S2: Ta.

W: Would you like something to drink? Or would you like to see the menu first?

ML: Er, the menu, I think, please. Bella, what do you think?

B: Erm ...

S2: No, let's have a drink. I'd like a ...

ML: Oh, OK.

S2: I'll have a ...

ML: Could we have a bottle of house red, please?

S2: Oh, OK. Good idea.

B: And a bottle of mineral water.

W: A bottle of mineral water - sparkling?

B: Please.

S1: Yup, fine by me.

W: One bottle of sparkling and a bottle of house red.

ML: Please.

S2: Excuse me, have you got an ashtray?

W: I'm very sorry, but this is a non-smoking table.

S2: What!?  B: Well, that was delicious.

S1: Yeah, it was good, wasn't it?

ML: Not too expensive, I hope.

B: Excuse me, could we have the bill, please?

W: Certainly, madam.

S2: I wonder where the other guy is. What's his name? You know, the major.

ML: You mean Mr Trotter.

S2: Yeah, that's right. 'Jolly good'.

ML: Don't be horrible. He's not that bad. Uh-oh, don't look now, but ... Mr Trotter! You have arrived!

7A Listening exercises 1 & 2 1.58

J = Jerry  V = Valerio  M = Michelle  T = Tony

J: Welcome back to Tell Jerry. Today we're taking calls from people who've met famous people in their work. Our first caller is Valerio from New Jersey. Hello, Valerio.

V: Good afternoon, Jerry.

J: Hi, Valerio. How are you doing?

V: Not too bad, man ...

J: Valerio, I understand you work as a chauffeur in New York.

V: It's my company, man.

J: OK. Er, have you ever met anyone famous in your job?

V: I sure have. Er, it's my company and I'm in charge. I keep all the stars for myself.

J: Er, Valerio, are you there?

V: Uh-huh.

J: Valerio, who have you driven in your car?
V: We get them all, man. Er, I've had more film stars than you can name.

J: Who was your last celebrity, Valerio?

V: I had, like, Madonna, I guess, er, two days ago. She was coming back from Britain. And I had Leonardo, er, what's his name, er, Leonardo Di Caprio the week before.

J: Have you ever spoken to any of the stars, Valerio?

V: Yeah, we say 'Good day, sir' or 'Good day, ma'am', but we're not paid to talk to them. It's not a yellow cab, you know what I mean? I've never had, like, a real conversation.

J: OK, thank you, Valerio. And over to our next caller. On the line is Michelle from Santa Monica. Hi there, Michelle, what do you do for a living?

M: Hi, Jerry. I'm a customer service assistant in a restaurant.

J: A customer service assistant?

M: Yeah, I'm a waitress.

J: OK, Michelle, have you met anyone really famous at work?

M: Brad Pitt and Jennifer Aniston.

J: Brad Pitt and Jennifer Aniston. Listeners, we have Michelle from Santa Monica on the line and Michelle has served Brad Pitt and Jennifer Aniston. Michelle, what were they like?

M: Mm, they were, you know, kind of cute.

J: Have you ever had any stars that were difficult customers?

M: Yeah, I've had some difficult people.

J: Can you tell us who?

M: Hey, no, I'll lose my job. But not many. Most of them are quiet - you know they just want to eat their dinner in peace.

J: Thank you, Michelle. Next caller. Thank you for calling Tell Jerry. This is Jerry - who is on the line?

T: Oh hello, Jerry. My name is Tony Lewington, calling from Manhattan.

J: Good afternoon, Tony. Tony, that's not an American accent.

T: I'm from Perth in Australia. I'm working for an ice cream shop in downtown Manhattan.

J: Tony the ice cream man, have you ever met anyone really famous in your work?

T: I've met a few, yeah. We had Tom Cruise and his girlfriend recently. And that other Tom, I can't remember his name, you know, in Forrest Gump. Tom ...

J: Tom Hanks?

T: Yeah, that's the one.

J: Have you ever spoken to one of the stars, Tony?

T: Oh, yeah. You know, you're getting an ice cream for someone, well, you talk to them, don't you? Well, I do. I've had a few good conversations.

J: What did you talk to Tom Cruise about?

T: Oh, we didn't talk. I was looking at his girlfriend.

J: Ah-hah! Be careful you don't get fired!

T: Hah. No worries.

J: OK. Thank you, Tony, from Perth in Australia.

7d Listening exercises 1 & 2 2.2

D: Davina  R: Ruby

D: Come in.

R: Erm, Mrs Sayers?

D: Yes, that's the name on the door. And you are ... ?

R: My name's Ruby. Ruby Tuesday. I've got an appointment.

D: Ah yes, Miss Tuesday. Come in.

R: Erm, it's Ms, actually. Not Miss.

D: Come in, my dear. Have a seat. Why don't you take your coat off?

R: I'm sorry I'm a bit late. I was making a copy of my CV.

D: You've brought it. Good. Could I see? Thank you. It's just the one page, is it?

R: Should I write some more?

D: Let's see. No, one page is probably enough. Do you have any qualifications?

R: No, not yet, but I'm thinking of going to evening classes. My boyfriend, Stuart, is a teacher at the college.

D: A professor of philosophy, is he?

R: Par-don!

D: Never mind. Now, what are you hoping to study?

R: Well, I'm quite interested in computers and the internet and things like that.

D: Well, a course in basic computer skills is a very good idea.

R: ... and my manager says I've got very good people skills.

D: Yes, I see. So what exactly are you looking for? What kind of job would you like to do?

R: I dunno, really. I don't care, really. Anything is better than serving hamburgers all day. Know what I mean?

D: Hmm, yes, well, I've never had that experience myself. But, to be honest, I think you should get a qualification before you look for a new job.

R: What? You mean you can't help me get another job?

D: No, not now. I mean, you, we can find you another job, but you should think about your future career. Your life, young lady. Your life.

R: That's a laugh. What should I do with my life?

D: Well, I'd begin with your clothes.

R: My clothes?

D: Yes, look at you. You should improve your appearance, young lady. Why don't you buy a smart suit for interviews, for a start?

R: Oh, right.

D: And are all those earrings really necessary?

R: What's wrong with them?

D: They're very, erm, very fashionable. Very nice. But not a good idea for a job interview, I think. And your hair. What about having a little haircut?

R: A haircut!? I went to the hairdresser's yesterday, actually. Anything else?

D: Well, perhaps, one more thing.

R: Yes?

D: Well, if I were you, I'd arrive for interviews on time.

R: And if I were you, I'd ... I'd ...

D: I'm only giving you a little bit of advice, young lady. Why don't you go away and think about it?
Speaking exercise 1 2.6–2.9

1 Right, er, well, there’ll be more and more supermarkets everywhere, you know. Everywhere you go you see the same things, the same chains – so more supermarkets on the outside of the town. Er, the town centres will get quieter and quieter, no – there’ll be less, um, less shops in the town centres and there’ll be more bars and cafés and things like that, um, so people will ... er, use their cars, I guess, more. Is that thirty seconds yet?

2 Everybody says that, er, you know, everybody will need English in the future, but I ... I don’t think this is true because, um, you know, you need, um, English for computers and the internet and that, but with ... with, um ... There’s more and more Chinese people in the world, so, you know, we’ll, maybe, we’ll speak Chinese, we’ll all need to speak Chinese because, um, ‘cos ... ‘cos we will, and, er, um ...

3 If you think about medicine now and you think about medicine, say one hundred years ago, the differences, um, are ... are incredible because we can ... we can do so many things now that we couldn’t do then, like, you know, we’ve got a cure for polio, we’ve got a cure for lots of diseases, and ... and transplants and things, so I guess in the future we’ll, you know, carry on and we’ll find cures for more and more things and we’ll, um ... That must be thirty seconds.

4 They get bigger and bigger, don’t they? Well, no, not bigger, but more powerful, I mean. I mean, you can do anything really, now, um ... Work, obviously, um, watch movies, play music, and, you know, they get smaller, and you can have little laptops or these little, er, these little things, you know, er, computers on your telephone, so, yeah they’re more and more important. We’ll all need them. They’ll just be a part of our lives. Well, they are already, really. Is that time up?

Listening exercises 2 & 3 2.10

Back in 2001, American millionaire, Dennis Tito became the world’s first space tourist. He paid 20 million dollars to fly to the International Space Station. A year later, the South African businessman, Mark Shuttleworth, wrote another 20-million dollar cheque to follow him. Others will probably follow soon, but who will it be? Perhaps, a pop star like Lance Bass of N’Sync? Or maybe another businessman? One thing is for sure: it certainly won’t be you. Or perhaps it will be.

A European television consortium, Eurorbit, has announced plans for a new TV game show. The show, which will probably be called Star Quest, will have contestants from all the countries in the European Union. It will test the contestants’ general knowledge, their skills and their ability to work in a team. Contestants will need to be fit and to speak English, but men and women of all ages are welcome to apply. The programme’s organizers hope to film the thirteen-part show at different science museums around Europe – in London, Florence, Paris and at the New Metropolis Science and Technology Center in Amsterdam.

And the prize? The winner of the show will take his, or her, seat in a space ship some time next year. After training at the European Space Academy, the winner will blast off for an eight-day trip to the stars and a visit to the International Space Station.

Or perhaps not. Not everyone is happy with the idea. Will scientists in America at NASA refuse permission for the winner to visit the space station? They were unhappy with Dennis Tito’s trip and say that this kind of space tourism is too dangerous. ‘This idea is so stupid,’ said one expert at New York University. However, a spokesman for Eurorbit said that the Americans will probably agree some kind of deal. Whatever happens, he said, the winner of the competition will definitely go into space. But it’s possible that they won’t be able to visit the space station.

The organizers of the programme are taking applications now. So if you want to be the next space tourist, send your request to contestant@eurorbit.com. That’s contestant@eurorbit.com. And good luck!

Listening exercises 1 & 2 2.12

ML = Mlle Lajolie  B = Bella

ML: Bella.
B: Yes?
ML: Could you give me a hand with this?
B: With what?
ML: I want to send an email.
B: Yes, of course. What’s the problem?
ML: Erm, I’m not too sure what I’m doing. Do I click on this?
B: Oh, no. Don’t do that! Let’s have a look. Where are you? Are you online?
ML: What do you mean?
B: Are you connected to the internet?
ML: I don’t know.
B: Here, look, first of all, click on that button there. That connects you to the internet.
ML: Oh right. Like this?
B: Yes, that’s right. No, do it again. Again, do a double click.
ML: Oh right.
B: OK. Now you’re online. Now, after that click on the email icon.
ML: What’s that?
B: The email icon? It’s for your mail.
ML: Oh right. Single click or double?
B: Single, I think. It doesn’t matter.
ML: Oh, look.
B: Right. Then, click on ‘Write Mail’. OK?
ML: It’s easy, isn’t it? Now what?
B: OK, you see the little picture of an address book? You type your address there next to the icon.
ML: I don’t know what my email address is.
B: Not your address, silly! The person you’re writing to.
ML: Oh right. Oh, where did I put that address? Ah, here it is.
B: That’s a school address. I know that school.
ML: Bella, you won’t tell anyone, will you?
B: I won’t tell anyone. Why are you writing to them?
ML: I’m applying for a job. I spoke to the director this morning and he asked me to send my CV.
B: You’re not leaving us?
ML: Erm, well, the money’s better and ...
B: Oh, poor Mr Trotter. He’ll be so unhappy.
ML: Huh! Not me. I’ll be very pleased not to see that – mm ... not to see him again. Anyway, you won’t say anything, will you?
B: Promise.
ML: So, what next?
B: Well, next you write your message. There in the big space.
ML: Oh, OK. ‘Dear Sir, With reference to our telephone conversation this morning, I am writing to you ... OK. Done.
B: Right. Where’s your CV?
ML: Oh, it’s on disk.
B: Oh, OK. Have you put it in the machine?
ML: Yes.
B: OK. Click on ‘Insert’. Then we need to find your document. Your CV. Ah, there it is. OK, you click on that. And afterwards click on ‘Attach’. That’s it.
ML: That’s it?
B: Yes, click on ‘Send’ and then finally you log off.
ML: Log off?
B: Yes, log off. Go back to that button there to leave the internet.
ML: Brilliant. Thanks. When will they get it?
B: What? Your mail? They’ve already got it.
ML: Really?

8D Listening & speaking exercise 1 2.13–2.17

1 Looking for a laugh? Buy one of these freaky green hands and put it on your desk at work. Just watch your colleagues’ faces when you talk to the hand and it starts walking!
2 Now you can write secret messages with our special invisible ink. The ultraviolet light means you can read them, too!
3 You can’t find your keys? Again! With a light that shines for ten years, you’ll never lose them again. And, if you like, you can play at Star Wars, too!
4 Feeling thirsty? Well, here’s your own personal water machine for your desk in the office. It holds eight cups. With this in front of you, you can be sure you’ll drink all the water you need.
5 Did you know that colours can change the way you feel? Do you sometimes wake up in the morning feeling (and looking!) grey? With one of these, you can wake up in the morning to a bright, colourful tomorrow.

9A Speaking & listening exercises 2 & 3 2.18

N = Nick  S = Sarah

N: Now for our weekly look at what’s on, Sarah, what have you got for us this week?
S: Well, probably the most exciting concert of the summer is happening on Friday, Saturday and Sunday this week at half-past seven. Robbie Williams. The gorgeous, talented and wonderful Robbie Williams is in town for three nights at the Wembley Arena. If you haven’t got tickets, you’ll be disappointed, but we’ve got two tickets to give away in this week’s competition. Stay tuned for more details of the competition after the news. Also this week, at my favourite club in London’s West End, there’s a special Brazilian night with top Brazilian DJs playing the latest tech-funk from the country’s coolest clubs. That’s in addition to the usual line-up of the regular DJs with a mix of house, techno and hip hop. That’s all on Saturday night Downstairs at The Sound Barrier in Oxford Street. Doors open at ten o’clock and you can dance until four in the morning. The place to be for a really cool night out.
N: Tech-funk at The Sound Barrier, Sarah. I know you think I’m a little boring, but what exactly is Brazilian ‘tech-funk’?
S: Why don’t you come and find out?
N: I’ll be too tired, I think. A little after my bedtime. What else have you got for us?
S: Well, there’s a fascinating afternoon of dance at Canary Wharf. It’s part of the Greenwich Festival and they’ve got groups from Switzerland, France and an excellent group called Inrepanion, er, I think that’s how you pronounce it, from Spain. It sounds very interesting, and it’s free. A great afternoon out for all the family. Let’s hope the weather stays fine. That’s Saturday at Canary Wharf between one and five.
N: Yes, sounds very interesting.
S: And if you’re interested in dance, don’t forget that you can still see London’s most popular and most enjoyable musical – Fame – at the Aldwych Theatre. Performances are on at half-past seven Monday to Saturday, with an afternoon show on Saturdays at half-past two. No shows on Sunday.
N: Have you seen it yet, Sarah?
S: I’ve been twice! And you?
N: Er, no. Not my kind of thing, actually.
S: The next thing I’ve got is something for you. This Friday, there is a performance of Verdi’s Requiem at the Royal Festival Hall. With the London Philharmonic. Half-past seven, Friday.
N: Ah, yes, a beautiful piece of music.
S: Isn’t it a bit depressing going to listen to a requiem?
N: Pardon?
S: Right, what next? Yes. I went to an exhibition at the National Gallery last week which was absolutely fantastic. It’s paintings by the Spanish impressionist, Pissarro.
N: Pissarro.
S: Yes, paintings that the artist did when he was living in London. I was quite surprised – they were really nice. So, for a afternoon of art and culture, check out this exhibition at the National Gallery. Every day from nine in the morning to six o’clock. Ooh, and one last idea. A fun idea for all the family. The Moscow State Circus is in Alexandra Park this week from Tuesday to Sunday. I saw them a few years ago and they’re one of the best circuses around.
N: Thank you, Sarah. You’ve got a busy weekend in front of you. Time now to go over to the news room, but stay tuned for details of our competition with two tickets to Robbie Williams at …

9d Pronunciation exercise 3  2.24
On the seventh of August, we have the Cuban salsa band, Los Van Van. Then, for two nights, on the twelfth and thirteenth of August, we have Justin Timberlake. Craig David is coming on the twenty-second of August, and we have the Red Hot Chili Peppers on September the third and fourth. For lovers of classical music, there is an evening with Cecilia Bartoli on September the twenty-first. Also, beginning on October the twenty-seventh and finishing on October the thirty-first, you can see Tchaikovsky’s Swan Lake. Shakira is coming on the third of November, and on the fifth of November we have Handel’s Messiah. The sixteenth of November is A Night with Mr Bean and on November the twenty-second, the Wynton Marsalis Septet are in town. Enrique Iglesias is coming on the second of December, and on the fourth of December there is a special tribute to the Beatles. From December the seventeenth to the twenty-fourth, we have our children’s show, Beauty and the Beast, and finally on the thirty-first of December, there is the Johann Strauss New Year concert.

9d Listening exercises 3 & 4  2.25–2.28

1  BO = Box Office  M = Mary

BO: Metropolitan Box Office. This is Trevor speaking. Can I help you?
M: Yes, hello. I’d like to book three tickets for Beauty and the Beast please.
BO: Certainly, madam. How many tickets do you want?
M: Three please.
BO: Three tickets for Beauty and the Beast. And what date would you like?
M: The Tuesday before Christmas, December the twenty-third, please.
BO: Would you like the matinee or the evening performance? The matinee starts at two o’clock.
M: Oh, the matinee, the matinee. It’s for a young child, you see. My great niece.
BO: Just one second, please. We’ve only got tickets in the rear circle for that date, madam.
M: Hmm. Monday the twenty-second?
BO: The twenty-second. Yes, we’ve got all tickets available for that date. What sort of seats would you like?
M: Oh, the front of the stalls. Definitely.
BO: So, that’s three seats at the front of the stalls for the twenty-second of December. Those seats cost thirty pounds each.
M: Fine.
BO: Could I take your name please, madam?
BO: Thank you, Mrs Sharp. And you’re paying by credit card?
M: Yes, Visa.
BO: Could I take your card number, please?

M: Yes, it’s 8146 double 6 282.
BO: Thank you. And the expiry date?
M: Yes, the expiry date is 07/09.
BO: Thank you, Mrs Sharp. That’s three tickets for the matinee performance of Beauty and the Beast on Monday the twenty-second of December. That will be ninety pounds plus a booking fee of three pounds, so ninety-three pounds altogether.
M: Lovely.
BO: Could I take your address, please?

2  BO = Box Office  B = Bella

BO: Metropolitan Box Office. This is Trevor speaking. Can I help you?
B: Hello, good afternoon. I’d like two tickets for Winston Marsala, please.
BO: Wynton Marsalis?
B: Yes, that’s the one.
BO: Wynton Marsalis Septet, Saturday the twenty-second of November. Half-past seven.
B: Have you got anything in the circle?
BO: Front or rear?
B: How much are the seats at the front?
BO: I’ve got two right in the middle at the front for twenty-eight pounds. And there’s a booking fee in addition to that. It’s one pound per ticket, so that’s fifty-eight pounds altogether. Could I take your details, please?
B: Yes, the name’s Moor. M, double O, R. And the first’s name’s Bella.
BO: Bella Moor.
B: I’ve got a Visa. And the card number is 204 205 009. Expiry date 03/09.
BO: Thank you, Mrs Moor.
B: Ms.
BO: Sorry, Ms Moor.
B: Would it be possible to send the tickets to someone else? They’re a present.
BO: Yes, certainly. If you’d like to give me the details.
B: Yes, the name is Mr Mike Marks, that’s M-A-R-K-S, and his address is Flat 4, number 27 Park …

3  BO = Box Office  S = Stuart

BO: Metropolitan Box Office. This is Trevor speaking. Can I help you?
S: Yeah, I want a ticket for the Red Hot Chilis on the fourth of September.
S: September the fourth … No, I’m sorry, sir, we’re sold out.
S: What about the other day? The third.
BO: Yes, we’ve got a few tickets left in the rear stalls.
S: Oh, great. How much are they?
BO: Just the one ticket is it, sir?
S: Yes, just the one.
BO: That’ll be thirty-six pounds, including the booking fee of one pound.
S: How much?
BO: Thirty-six pounds altogether, sir.
S: Thirty-six quid? Forget it.
4 BO = Box Office  P = Patrick

BO: Metropolitan Box Office. This is Trevor. How can I help you?
P: Good afternoon. I'd like two tickets for the evening with Cecilia Bartoli.
BO: Yes, Cecilia Bartoli. Certainly, sir.
P: Yes, Cecilia Bartoli. The best seats you've got, please.
BO: I'll see what seats we've got available. We've got a couple of seats at the front of the circle at forty-five pounds each.
P: Marvellous.
BO: There's a booking fee of two pounds, so that'll be ninety-two pounds altogether.
P: Jolly good. Do you take American Express?
BO: That'll be no problem, sir. Could I take your details, please?
P: Yes, the name's Trotter. Major Patrick Trotter and the address is ...

10c Listening exercises 2 & 3  2.30

M = Martin  P = Presenter  S = Sunil

M: ... so an excellent weekend for the top three in the Premiership with Arsenal, Chelsea and Manchester United all winning.
P: Thank you, Martin, and the full football results will be after the news at six o'clock. Now, the other big event this weekend was the New York Marathon. To bring us up to date with the news from New York, here's Sunil Gupta.
S: Yes, it's all over here in New York. This year's winner of the men's race was the Kenyan, Martin Lel, in a time of 2 hours, 10 minutes and 30 seconds. In an exciting finish, Lel pushed last year's winner, Rodgers Rop, into second place, with Christopher Cheboiboch taking the bronze and making it one-two-three for Kenya. Another Kenyan, Margaret Okayo, took the women's race in a time of 2 hours 22 minutes and 31 seconds. But the big event of the afternoon for the spectators in Manhattan's Central Park was the arrival on the line of the two Britons, Ranulph Fiennes and Mike Stroud. Fiennes and Stroud crossed the line together with an official time of 5 hours 25 minutes and 46 seconds and will surely be in the Guinness Book of Records.

For Fiennes and Stroud, this was an incredible seventh marathon in seven days in seven different continents. Their marathon marathon began last week in Patagonia in the deep south of South America. In the last week, they have been to the Antarctic, Sydney, Singapore, London and Cairo, completing a marathon at each stopover. Perhaps the most astonishing thing about this achievement is that Ranulph Fiennes suffered a heart attack earlier this year and had a heart operation just three months ago. Fiennes and his colleague, Mike Stroud, have raised millions of pounds for the British Heart Foundation by completing the marathon in New York today. For Fiennes and Stroud, it's all in a day's work. On previous expeditions, they have raised more than four million pounds for a multiple sclerosis research centre and two million pounds for a breast cancer clinic. They have been to the North and South Poles, they have walked across the Andes, they have canoed up the Amazon, and in the 1990s, Fiennes discovered the lost city of Ubar in the desert of Oman. But at a party tonight in New York's Central Park to celebrate the end of the race, other runners were disappointed to find that Fiennes and Stroud were not there. A spokesman for the British Heart Foundation said, 'Both runners are completely exhausted and they have gone home. They caught a plane to London earlier this evening. Dr Fiennes has gone to join his wife before going into hospital for a check-up on his heart next week. Dr Stroud has gone to London for a day or rest before returning to work on Tuesday morning.' This is Sunil Gupta reporting from New York's Central Park.
P: Thank you, Sunil. And the time is now six o'clock Greenwich Mean Time.

10d Listening exercises 1 & 2  2.33–2.34

I  D = Doctor  S = Stuart

D: Come in, come in, take a seat. Now, how can I help you?
S: Er, yeah, well, I'm not very well.
D: Well, you look a bit grey, Mr Simeon. Tell me what's the matter.
S: I've got a headache all the time.
D: Yes. And?
S: I've got a cold.
D: And a cough.
S: Yes, that's right.
D: Where else does it hurt?
S: Everywhere, really. My back, my chest, my neck. To be honest, I feel awful.
D: OK. I'll have a look at you. Take off your shirt.
S: What?
D: Your shirt, Mr Simeon.
S: Oh, right.
D: And put this in your mouth. I want to see if you've got a temperature.
S: Do you think ... ?
D: Don't talk now. Ssh.
S: Hmmm
D: Hmm, let's see. Mm ... 39°. It's quite high.
S: Nothing serious, is it? What's wrong with me?
D: Oh, flu, I think.
S: Oh! I thought it was maybe something serious.
D: Flu can be serious, Mr Simeon, but it's nothing to worry about. OK, put your shirt back on. Now, you'll need to take four or five days off work. Rest as much as possible, stay in bed. You should take some aspirin or paracetamol for the pain. And you should eat lots of fruit and vegetables. You need lots of vitamin C. Is there someone who can look after you? I can't remember. Are you married?
S: No.
D: Oh, no, that's right. You've got a girlfriend, haven't you? Ruby, isn't it?
S: Not at the moment. She left me.
D: Ah! I am sorry. Do you feel depressed?
S: Depressed? Me? Never!
D: Well, you need someone to look after you. Your mother, perhaps? But I’ll give you a prescription for some strong paracetamol. All right?
S: Is that it? No antibiotics or anything?
D: No, no antibiotics. Just lots of rest. And I’ll give you a letter for your work.
S: Oh, right. Thanks.

2 D = Doctor M = Mike

D: Next. Ah, Mr Marks.
M: Yeah, uh, hi.
D: How can I help you?
D: Mr Marks?
M: Yeah?
D: Er, perhaps you can call the person back?
M: Yeah, sorry. Sorry. Listen, Bella, I’m in a meeting right now. Can I call you back? OK, speak to you later. Sorry about that, doctor.
D: Right, well. Perhaps, if you’re not too busy ... What seems to be the matter?
M: Yeah, sorry. Um, I’ve, er, I’ve had a stomach ache for a few days. Oh, sorry. I’ll switch it off. Yeah, it’s my stomach. It really hurts. Is there anything I can take for it?
D: So, you’ve got a stomach ache. Are you eating normally?
M: What do you mean?
D: I mean, are you eating normally? What did you have for lunch, for example?
D: A coffee? Nothing to eat? And breakfast?
M: Coffee. Oh, and a piece of chocolate.
D: Mr Marks. You cannot be serious. You say you have a pain in your stomach. You have a pain in your stomach because you have eaten nothing all day.
M: Well, I’m not very hungry at the moment.
D: I can see that.

M: I’ve got a meeting in New York later in the week. And, well, I hate flying, and every time I think about getting in the plane, my stomach hurts and sometimes I get a headache, sometimes I feel cold, sometimes I feel hot, or hot and cold, you know, and I’m not hungry, and I think of that plane, and I think oh no I can’t, I can’t, I mean, you know, what if the plane crashes or something, and then I get this really, really big, big headache, and my eyes hurt, here, my eyes, behind the eyes, you know, it’s really painful ...
D: Calm down, calm down. Mr Marks, I don’t think that it’s a very good idea for you to go to New York for that meeting. Not right now.
M: What?
D: I don’t think you should travel at the moment.
M: What? Not go to New York?
D: No.
M: Oh. Brilliant. Will you give me a letter for my boss to say that I’m ill?
D: Yes.
M: But you won’t say that it’s because I’m afraid of flying.

D: No, I will say that you are not well enough to travel. Your headaches and your lack of appetite point to stress and I will say that you are suffering from stress. And I’ll also make an appointment for you to see a specialist. Someone who can help you with your fear of flying. Now, you need to eat. A good, healthy meal. That’s the most important thing.
M: I’m going out for dinner tonight. New girlfriend.
D: Good. But have something now. Go and buy something to eat when you leave here, OK?
M: That’s it? No prescription? No medicine?
D: No. Er, yes. I mean, yes, that’s it and, no, no medicine. Not for now. Get something to eat. OK?
M: Yeah, OK.
D: All right, now, come back and see me in ten days.
M: Yeah, yeah. Right.
D: Goodbye, Mr Marks. See you in ten days.

11A Listening exercises 2 & 3  2.40–2.41

Susan I was just starting in business. It was a small advertising agency that I ran with my sister and in those days it was hard for a woman to run a business. Most, maybe all, of our clients were men and we took them out, we entertained them. We took them to restaurants, we took them to ball games, we took them out to make them feel good and we wanted them to take us seriously. But most of them were just boys, really, and they thought we were out on a date. You know, they were our clients but they wanted to pay. Then, one evening when I was out with a client, there was a woman at the table next to mine, and when the check came, she held up this little card, American Express, I guess it was, and the waiter said ‘Yes, ma’am’. Gee, I wanted one of those baaaad. Next day, I spoke to my sister. At first she said no, but after a few weeks she finally agreed and we applied for a card. I remember the first time I used it. When the check came, my client looked at me in the eyes and said ‘I’ll take care of that, honey’, but I already had my card in the air. Hell, was he impressed! He signed the contract right there in the restaurant. It was the best investment we ever made.

Katy What did I really want when I was younger? Hah, the same as now! But I want more now! No, seriously, but we don’t change as we get older, do we? Well, I don’t anyway. No, what I wanted was independence. I was still living with my parents and it took me ages, bloomin’ ages, to get into town for a night out. And the last train home was really early, so I had to leave just when the evening was getting going. I mean, there you are with some really gorgeous bloke, and you look at your watch and it’s half-past nine or something. ‘Sorry, but my last train goes in twenty minutes.’ It was driving me mad. I was saving up to buy a Mini, but when I saw my first Capri, I took one look at it and knew that was what I wanted. It took me two years to get enough money, but in the end, there I was, the owner of my very own Capri Mark I 1600 sex bomb, metallic yellow with very sexy sports wheels. So, finally, I had what I needed to go out when I wanted, where I wanted and with who I wanted. I’ve done hundreds of thousands of miles in it. I’ve still got it, actually.
11A Functional language exercise 1  2.42–2.43

1 Good afternoon, I’m looking for a – I’m sorry I don’t know the right word. It’s a kind of computer, a little one that you can put in your pocket. You know, it’s a thing you send emails with, I think. In fact, I’m not really sure what you do with it. But you know what I mean. A little computer. It’s a present for my grandson.

2 Good morning. I’m looking for some, erm, what do you call them? You know, they’re a sort of shoe. Well, not really a shoe, but, erm, well, yes they’re a sort of shoe, really. You use them to go to the beach. In the summer. You see all the young people wearing them. Do you know what I mean?

11D Listening exercises 2 & 3  2.47

B = Bella   ML = Mlle Lajolie   P = Patrick

B: Do you mind if we do just one more shop?
ML: No, I don’t mind. I’m enjoying myself.
B: That’s because you’re not looking for anything special. And you can buy anything. It’s easy for you. It all looks good on you.
ML: Well, I find it easier than you – but what about that black dress you tried on in the last shop? It really suited you. Why didn’t you get it?
B: It didn’t suit me at all. I looked like a waitress in a cheap restaurant.
ML: You did not. You looked great.
B: I did not. The only thing I’ve really liked was that red dress in H & M. But every time I find something that I like, it doesn’t fit me. I mean, they have my size, but they never seem to fit.
ML: It’s difficult with dresses, isn’t it?
B: Difficult? Impossible, more like. I always look fat in dresses. Maybe, I’ll just get a top that goes with my black skirt. What do you think?
ML: It might be easier. I saw some nice ones in the window of Zara.
B: What colour suits me best?
ML: Maybe green to go with your eyes?
B: Green?
ML: Yes, there was a really nice green top in the Zara window.
B: I don’t think Mike likes green.
ML: Huh! What does he know about clothes? His jackets are always three sizes too big, and his trousers don’t fit him either.
B: He likes the relaxed, casual look. I think it suits him.
ML: Oh, well. What about, I don’t know, maybe something silver or gold?
B: That’s a thought. You don’t think that silver or gold are a bit, you know …?
ML: No, they’d look really good with that skirt. Gold, maybe, because you’ve got some really nice gold jewellery. But silver would be OK, too.
P: Afternoon, ladies.
ML: Oh, God, it’s that awful man.
B: Hello, Mr Trotter.

P: Bonjour. Bonjour. Done some shopping, I see. Any bargains?
ML: I’m sorry, Mr Trotter, we’re in a bit of a hurry. We were just going. There are a few things we need before the shops close.
P: Let me carry your bags, my dear.
ML: That will be quite all right, thank you. Come on, Bella. Goodbye, Mr Trotter.
P: Yes, well, jolly good. See you at the party this evening?
B: Yes. Bye.
ML: He’s not going to the party, is he?
B: I’m afraid so. It’s for the students as well as the staff.
ML: If he tries to chat to me up one more time, I’ll, I’ll – Come on, let’s find a top for you.
B: Ooh, look.
ML: Oh, yes, that looks nice. That would suit you. Let’s hope they’ve got your size. Shall we go in and have a look?
B: Yes. Did you see what Mr Trotter was wearing?!
ML: I try not to look at him.
B: I know you like him really.
ML: Bella. Come on, let’s have a look at those tops.

12A Listening exercises 1 & 2  2.54

They said he couldn’t do it, but early this morning, the American adventurer, Steve Fossett, finally got out of his helium-filled balloon at Lake Yamma Yamma in Queensland, 700 miles north of Sydney. After six attempts, Steve Fossett has become the first person to fly solo round the world. The journey, of more than 20,000 miles, took him just under fifteen days, although he had a few problems on the way and he almost called the attempt off.

Steve took off from Northam in Western Australia on June 19th. He had to put off his departure for three hours because of a problem with wind, but he finally got going, flying past Sydney and New Zealand before starting the long journey over the Pacific to Santiago in Chile. At a news conference, Steve said, ‘I had some exciting moments.’ At one point, he was flying low when his burner control stopped working. On another occasion, there was a small fire in the balloon. But compared to his earlier attempts, these were small problems. The difficulties were sorted out and Steve was able to carry on with his epic journey.

Steve now plans to give up ballooning, but he has one or two other interesting hobbies. Way back in 1985, he swam across the Channel between England and France. He took part in the Alaska Dog Race in 1992, and in 1996 he raced in the 24-hour Classic at Le Mans in France. He holds the Round the World record for small aeroplanes – in both directions – and in 2001, he sailed across the Atlantic in four days seventeen hours, beating the previous record by an incredible 43 hours. Oh, and I almost forgot, he holds another eight world records for speed sailing.

His latest interest is gliding. He already has the world records for 500 and 1000 kilometres. What next? Well, his next project is to fly a glider to the edge of space. The edge of space in a glider? It sounds crazy, but adventure is a way of life for this extraordinary, quiet man. Channel Five will be
showing a documentary about the life and achievements of Steve Fossett this evening at nine-fifteen and there will be ...

12c Vocabulary exercise 5  2.57

The most widely-spoken language in the world is Mandarin Chinese with approximately 1 billion speakers. Next comes the Indian language family of Hindi, Bengali, Punjabi and so on. More than half a billion people speak one or more of these languages. After that, we have English which also has more than 500 million speakers (including speakers of English as a second or third language). The next language on our list is Spanish, with speakers in Spain, Central and South America. Next is Russian, followed by Arabic. At number seven on our list is Portuguese with about 200 million speakers and finally, at number eight, is French with about 130 million.

12b Listening exercises 1 & 2  2.61–2.64

1 B = Bella  M = Mike

B: Mike, where have you been? I was really worried.
M: Bella, I’ve had a terrible day. Awful.
B: Why? What happened?
M: A worm got through my firewall and disabled my C drive.
B: Mike, what are you talking about? I don’t understand a single word.
B: Oh God, we had one of those viruses at work. Why do people send those things? Do they think it’s funny? They must be mad.
B: Why don’t the police do something to stop them?
M: I dunno, Bell. Maybe, they’re too busy with other things.
B: Anyway, I’m really sorry. Come on, let me get you a drink. Forget about it. Are we going to dance later?

2 P = Patrick  ML = Mile Lajolie

P: Ah, I was hoping to see you. Marvellous party, don’t you think?
ML: Oh, it’s you.
P: Can I get you a drink? Would you like a crisp?
ML: Pardon?
P: A crisp. Jolly good, if you ask me. Cheese and onion flavour, I think.
ML: Mr Trotter, I do not eat junk food.
P: I know, I know. You want to keep looking good, eh?
ML: No, Mr Trotter. I eat natural, organic food because I care about the future of this planet. I like to know what I am eating and I do not wish to eat genetically modified potatoes with chemical flavours.
P: You eat all that organic stuff, do you? I’ve always thought that it’s a waste of money. All tastes the same to me.
ML: Well, that is not the way I see it. Now, will you excuse me? There’s someone I want to talk to.
P: Oh, well, see you later.

3 R = Ruby  D = Davina

R: ‘Scuse me, can you pass the crisps, please?
D: Certainly. Here you are. Ah, it’s, erm, I believe we have met.
R: Ruby.
D: Ah, yes, Ruby.
R: I came for some job advice. You said something about my clothes.
D: Ah, yes, Ruby.
R: Would you like to give some money to the homeless this Christmas? It’s for Christmas presents for homeless children.
D: Oh, absolutely, absolutely. What a good idea. Is one pound enough, do you think?
R: Well, it’s not exactly generous. Do you know how hard their lives are? Living on the street.
D: Yes, yes, I see what you mean, but I don’t have any more change.
R: Some people give notes.
D: You are extremely pushy, young lady. Here. Take ten pounds. It is for a good cause after all. We should all help the poor. Not everyone is as fortunate as myself. Now, who is that handsome young man standing over there?
R: Him?! That’s Stuart. My ex.
D: What a marvellous example of a man.
R: You must be joking! He’s a monkey. You can have him!
D: What are you suggesting, young lady?

4 S = Stuart  M = Mary

S: ‘Scuse me. Have we met before?
M: I don’t think so, young man. I always remember a face.
S: Oh, I just thought …
M: I never forget a face, young man. And certainly not a handsome young man like you.
S: Oh, right. Nice weather, innit?
M: It’s certainly very hot. But I wouldn’t call it ‘nice’. There’s nothing nice about global warming.
S: Global what? You mean all that stuff about the planet getting hotter? I don’t care about that.
M: Well, I disagree, I’m afraid. I think we should all be extremely worried.
S: Nah. I’m not sure about that. I read in the newspaper that it’s not true that it’s getting hotter. It’s just a bit hot that’s all.
M: You shouldn’t believe everything you read in the newspapers, you know.
S: Yeah, well, that’s the problem, innit? People like you and me don’t know what to believe.
M: Well, I’m telling you that you should be worried.
S: What do you know about it?
M: I’m a climatologist.
S: A what?
M: A weather scientist, young man.
Review

1 Complete the questions with a word from the box.

how (x2)  what (x3)  when  who  why

1 ___ is her name?
2 ___ was she born?
3 ___ many brothers and sisters does she have?
4 ___ colour is her hair?
5 ___ languages does she speak?
6 ___ is she famous?
7 ___ rich is she?
8 ___ was her grandfather?

2 Match the answers below to the questions in exercise 1.

1 because she is very rich
2 in 1985
3 reddish brown
4 Athina Roussell
5 she has more than $2 billion
6 Swedish, French and English
7 the Greek businessman, Aristotle Onassis
8 three

3 Write questions for the sentences below.

1 What did Athina’s mother give her for her second birthday?
2 Her mother died in 1988.
3 Athina lived in Switzerland.
4 Her father and step-mother have a house in Lausanne.
5 Athina’s first boyfriend was Alvaro Alfonso de Miranda Neta.
6 He comes from Brazil.
7 Athina calls him Doda.
8 Athina is very popular in Greece.

4 Rearrange the words to make questions.

1 a common do have him in lot with you ?
2 are best friend his you ?
3 go he school to did with you ?
4 at friends good school were you ?
5 married he is ?
6 live you near he does ?
7 did him see yesterday you ?
8 English speak can he ?

5 Match the short answers below to the questions in exercise 4.

a No, he doesn’t.
be No, I didn’t.
c No, I’m not.
d No, we weren’t.
e Yes, he can.
f Yes, he did.
g Yes, he is.
h Yes, I do.

6 Think of a (male) friend. Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions in exercise 4.

7 Each of the telephone messages below has two words missing. Insert the missing words.

there
1 I’m afraid is no one to take your call right now.
your
Please leave your name and I’ll call you back.
2 Hello, this 2470362. There’s no one at home the moment. Please leave a message after the beep.
3 Hello, my name is Sayers and I’m calling your advertisement in the newspaper. My number is 446091. Could call me back later, please?
4 This Ruby here. I’m not at home right now. Please leave your message and I’ll try call you later. Many thanks.
5 Ruby, are you there? Ruby? It’s Stuart. Can you give me a call at work some time afternoon? Or you can call me mobile. It’s urgent, OK?

8 Look at Sean Connery’s family tree and decide if the sentences are true (t) or false (f).

Ralph m Phyllis
| Joe m Effie
| Diane m Sean
| Jason Joseph m Mia
| Neil m Elinor

m = married men women

1 Diane is Mia’s mother-in-law.
2 Effie is Jason Joseph’s grandmother.
3 Elinor and Diane are cousins.
4 Elinor is Effie’s aunt.
5 Jason Joseph is Neil’s nephew.
6 Mia is Sean’s niece.
7 Phyllis is Diane’s mother.
8 Sean is Ralph’s son-in-law.
2 | Review

1 Complete the text. Put the verbs in brackets into the past simple or the past continuous.

A few years ago, a student (1) worked (work) for a telephone pizza company in the evenings after college. One day, she took a pizza to the richest man in town. The man (2) paid (pay) the money, took the pizza and (3) went (go) into his house. He (4) opened (open) the pizza box when the doorbell (5) rang (ring) again. He went to the door and saw that the student was still there. Clearly, she (6) waited (wait) for something. ‘What do you want? A tip?’ the man (7) asked (ask). ‘No, sir,’ replied the student. ‘When I (8) put (put) the pizza on my bike, I spoke to the boy who brought your pizza yesterday. He said you didn’t give tips.’ ‘That’s not true,’ the man (9) replied (reply). ‘In fact, I’m very generous. Here, take five dollars.’ ‘That’s very kind of you, sir,’ said the student. ‘I needed the money to buy a book for my course at college.’ ‘What are you studying?’ asked the man. ‘Psychology, sir.’

2 Read the information about Trinity College in Dublin. Write six questions about the text in the past simple. Begin your questions with:

When
What did ...?
Where
When did Trinity College open?

Trinity College, Dublin, became the first Irish university when it opened in 1594. All the students studied the same subjects - Latin, Greek, mathematics, science and philosophy. In 1834, the university allowed students to study specialized subjects. Eight years later, the university opened a department of engineering. In 1925, the first students entered the university’s business school.

At the beginning, Trinity College was only for Protestants. The first Catholic students arrived two hundred years later. Many famous writers studied at Trinity. Jonathan Swift (who wrote Gulliver’s Travels) and Bram Stoker (who wrote Dracula) both went there. The first women did not enter Trinity College until 1904. Mary Robinson, who became the first woman Irish president in 1990, studied law at Trinity in the 1960s.


4 Change the sentences below so that they are true for you. Use used to or didn’t use to with the correct form of the verb in italics.
1 I used to go to a school near home when I was young.
2 I went to a school near home when I was young.
3 I sat at the front of the class.
4 I was the teacher’s favourite pupil.
5 I did extra homework every day.
6 We had sport every Wednesday afternoon.
7 I enjoyed sport.
8 I got very good grades in all my subjects.
9 I liked English lessons.

5 Complete the first word of the questions below:
1 ______ I have some information about your English courses, please?
2 ______ there any examinations I can take?
3 ______ you have a school in the centre of town?
4 ______ long do the courses last?
5 ______ you tell me anything about the teachers?
6 ______ much do the courses cost?
7 ______ there a library that students can use?
8 ______ time is the class for beginners?

6 Match the sentences below to the questions in exercise 5.
1 The tuition fees are all on this piece of paper.
2 They’re all very experienced and qualified.
3 Usually about ten weeks. We have the same terms as state schools.
4 We’re very flexible and we have many different timetables.
5 Yes, certainly. And we usually get very good results.
6 Yes, certainly. There’s a meeting for new pupils this afternoon, if you’re interested.
7 Yes. We also have a language laboratory and multimedia centre.
8 Yes. We have eight different locations. You can choose.
3 | Review

1. In the newspaper article below there are eight mistakes. Correct the mistakes.

Melbourne is the world's best city

The Australian city of Melbourne is the best place in the worlds to live.

The Australian city of Melbourne is the best place in the worlds to live, says a report from the Economist Intelligence Unit. The EIU looked at more than one hundred city around the world.

Melbourne got high grades for educations, entertainments and culture, housing, healths and weather. Because of this, more and more visitor were coming to Melbourne.

Other Australian cities also did well, but the report showed that there was more crimes in Sydney.

The best European cities were Vienna and Geneva, but Paris (28), Madrid (45=) and London (45=) were much lower in the list because of problems with crime, the weathers and the prices in the shops.

New York and Washington had similar difficulties, but were lower in the list.

3. In three of the sentences below, of is not necessary. Cross out of where it is incorrect.

1. Did you know that there are many of places in the world called London?
2. Most of them are in North America.
3. Many of them are very small towns.
4. However, some of them, like London, Ontario, are big.
5. There are also some of places called London in Africa.
6. Most of people in London, England, have never heard of these other places.

4. Choose the best quantifier to complete the sentences.

1. My flat’s really nice but the neighbours make a lot of/ not enough / too many noise.
2. There’s a few / not many / too much traffic in my street.
3. My flat’s quite small and there’s a lot of / not enough / too many space when we have visitors.
4. I often invite a few / not much / too much friends for dinner in the evenings.
5. I’m looking for a new flat because this one costs a little / not enough / too much money.
6. I like going out so I only spend a few / a little / a lot of time at home.
7. I’ve lived in many / not much / too much different places, but this is my favourite.
8. There’s a few / not much / too many nightlife in this part of town.

5. Look at the map on page 32 and complete the directions from the train station to the bars and restaurants near the river.

of → of (x2)
out go take on

When you come (1) ________ of the train station, turn right. Walk along this road and then (2) ________ the first street (3) ________ your right. You go under a (4) ________ and then you come to the castle. (5) ________ left and follow this road. Keep to the right and you’ll come (6) ________ the river. The bars and restaurants are on the other side (7) ________ the Tyne Bridge next (8) ________ the river.

6. Work with a partner. Choose one of the places in the box. Give directions to this place from your school, but do not say the name of the place. Your partner must guess which place you are talking about.

art gallery  bus station  cinema  museum
nightclub  park  shopping centre  theatre

2. Complete the dialogue with some, any or no.

A: I’m phoning you about the flat you advertised in the newspaper. Are there (1) ________ rules I should know about?
B: Er, yes. You can’t have (2) ________ pets. (3) ________ dogs, (4) ________ cats. We’ve had (5) ________ problems with animals in the past.
A: Oh, fine. I’ve got (6) ________ friends coming to visit me at the weekend. Is that OK?
B: That’s (7) ________ problem. Visitors are very welcome until ten o’clock.
A: And after ten?
B: No. You can’t have (8) ________ guests in your room after ten. House rules, I’m afraid.
A: Do you have (9) ________ other rules like that?
B: There are (10) ________ other little things, but nothing important.
A: OK, well, I’m going to look at (11) ________ other flats this afternoon. I’ll give you a call this evening.
B: OK, speak to you later.
1 Each of the advertisements below contains three mistakes. Correct the mistakes.

Do you like going to museums? Does you want to talk about philosophy and politics? Do you have a large collection of books? No? Good! My ideal man doesn’t has time for all that. He is tall and handsome and enjoy sport of all kinds.

Box 788367

My perfect man is the strong, silent type. He not find it easy to say how he feels and most people doesn’t understand him. But he know that somewhere, he will find the woman of his dreams. It’s me.

Box 468835

Do the modern world drive you mad? Do you believe in a better, more natural way of life? I have a beautiful house in the mountains, but I am need someone to share it with me. If you wants a change and you like the outdoor life, get in touch.

Box 794662

2 Put the words in brackets in the correct place in the sentences.

1 We don’t go out on our own. (often)
2 We have arguments about little things. (sometimes)
3 We share all the housework. (usually)
4 We speak on the phone. (six times a day)
5 We talk about our day at work. (every evening)
6 We tell each other all our secrets. (always)
7 We want to have children. (never)
8 We wear the same colour clothes. (often)

3 Complete the phrases with in, on or at.

1 ____ 1917
2 ____ Friday afternoon
3 ____ lunchtime
4 ____ October
5 ____ the start of the lesson
6 ____ the weekend
7 ____ February 29th
8 ____ half past two
9 ____ New Year’s Day
10 ____ Sunday
11 ____ the summer holidays
12 ____ the winter

4 Put the verbs in brackets into the present simple or the present continuous.

A: ________ (you / have) a boyfriend at the moment?
B: Yes, I ________ (go) out with a guy called Paul.
A: Paul? Paul what? ________ (I / know) him?
B: No, I ________ (not / think) so. He’s a journalist.
A: Really? Who ________ (he / work) for?
B: The BBC. He ________ (make) a TV programme about online dating.
A: That’s interesting! I ________ (see) a guy that I met online.
B: Really? ________ (you / want) to meet Paul? He’d love to talk to you.

5 Rearrange the words to make questions.

1 also are English friends studying your ?
2 come does from Scotland teacher your ?
3 do go often restaurants to you ?
4 are jeans today wearing you ?
5 do like your parents travelling ?
6 at is it moment raining the?

6 Match the short answers to the questions in exercise 5.

a No, I’m not.  d Yes, I do.
b No, they don’t.  e Yes, it is.
c No, they’re not.  f Yes, she does.

7 Now give answers that are true for you to the questions in exercise 5.

8 In each suggestion/response below, there is one word missing. Insert the missing word.

1 How tomorrow? Dinner at my place tomorrow?
2 I’d rather. I’m always tired afterwards.
3 It’s kind you, but I have an evening class this evening.
4 Well, why don’t meet after your class?
5 Would you like come to dinner this evening?
6 Yes, why not? I’d love.

9 Rearrange the lines in exercise 8 to make a dialogue. Practise the dialogue with a partner.
1 **Philip has planned a weekend in Poland. Continue the description of his plans using going to + infinitive or present continuous.**

**Friday evening**
Arrive in Krakow – find a hotel.

**Saturday morning**
Visit the city centre, the cathedral and the castle.
12.30 Meet Grzegorz for lunch (Wierzynek restaurant).

**Saturday afternoon**
Catch minibus to Wieliczka salt mine.

**Saturday evening**
Go to Beethoven concert (Philharmonica Hall).
Dinner – find a good restaurant in the old town.

**Sunday**
9.30 Visit Historical Museum (with Marek).
Have picnic with Marek (and his friends) in the Wolski Forest.
18.30 Fly home.

*He is arriving in Krakow on Friday evening and then he is going to look for a hotel. On Saturday morning, he ...*

2 **Make questions/sentences from the prompts. Use going to + infinitive or the present continuous.**

1 A: how / he / get / to Krakow ?
B: he / catch / a plane / from Heathrow
2 A: he / buy / a guide book ?
B: no / his friends / show him around
3 A: he / visit / other Polish cities ?
B: no / he / not have / enough time
4 A: why / he / stay / only two days ?
B: he / go back / to Poland / next year

3 **Choose the correct form to complete the dialogues.**

1 A: Have you got a single room for two nights?
B: I think so. I'll just check / I'm just going to check.

2 A: Would you like a room with a view? It’s a bit more expensive.
B: No thanks. I'll have / I'm going to have the cheaper room.

3 A: Do you want to book a table for dinner?
B: No thanks. I'll have / I'm going to have dinner with some friends.

4 A: Could you give me a wake-up call in the morning?
B: Yes, sir. We'll do / We're going to do that for you.

5 A: Do you need a taxi?
B: No thanks. A friend will come / is coming to pick me up.

4 **Complete the sentences. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form.**

1 I'm interested in _____ (hear) more about your special offers.

2 I would like _____ (spend) a couple of weeks in the Swiss Alps.

3 I want _____ (climb) a few mountains.

4 I hope _____ (do) some sky diving as well.

5 I intend _____ (take) my own equipment.

6 I'm planning _____ (go) there in the late spring.

7 I'm looking forward to _____ (hear) from you.

5 **In the dialogue below there are six mistakes. Correct the mistakes.**

A: Good morning, sir. How can I help you?
B: Yes, I've got a ticket to London for tomorrow morning and I wonder if I could change it for a flight in the evening.

A: I'll see what I can do. Could I see your ticket and passport, please?
B: Yes, of course. Here you are.
A: No problem. About what time do you want to leave?
B: I'd like to take the last flight, please.

A: I'm afraid but the last flight is fully booked, but we have a seat on the 19.35.

B: That's fine. Can I having a window seat, please?
A: I sorry, but I can't do that for you now. Ask when you get to check-in.

B: OK.
A: Could you just sign here, please?

6 **Complete the sentences with a word from the box.**

- air conditioning
- facilities
- lift
- location
- room service
- shower
- twin

1 The hotel has excellent _______ with a fantastic gym and sauna.

2 It has an incredible _______ near the cable car station.

3 We asked for a room with a _______ and toilet.

4 We wanted a double room but they only had one with _______ beds.

5 The _______ didn't work and, unfortunately, our room was on the sixth floor.

6 It's very hot here, but all the rooms have _______.

7 In the mornings, we telephoned _______ and had breakfast in bed.
Replace the adjectives in the sentences below with their opposites. Choose from the adjectives in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>artificial</th>
<th>authentic</th>
<th>boring</th>
<th>delicious</th>
<th>empty</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>expensive</td>
<td>traditional</td>
<td>slow</td>
<td>unhealthy</td>
<td>weak</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. We had an extremely cheap meal last night.
2. The food was quite interesting, especially the dessert.
3. It was a very healthy menu, too.
4. Everything was really modern.
5. The service was a bit fast.
6. I’m not surprised that the restaurant was fairly full.

Put the adjectives in brackets into the correct form.

**Ristorante Palio**
For a good, honest meal, you won’t find (1) ______ (good) than this. It serves traditional Italian food and it’s (2) ______ (authentic) than other Italian restaurants in town. The service is (3) ______ (slow) than we would like, but it’s a lot (4) ______ (friendly).

★★★

**The Cut**
The Cut is probably (5) ______ (fashionable) restaurant in the centre of town. It’s got (6) ______ (loud) music and (7) ______ (uncomfortable) chairs, but it seems that everyone wants to go there. The prices are (8) ______ (high) than the other restaurants in the area, but for (9) ______ (unforgettable) night out, this is the place to go.

★★★★

Put the sentences into two groups:
1. making a reservation for a restaurant
2. in a restaurant
   a. Certainly, madam. For how many people?
   b. Have you got anything for nine o’clock?
   c. Hello. We have a reservation for two people. The name is Wilson.
   d. I’d like to book a table for this evening, please.
   e. It’s just for two people.
   f. Lovely. It is a non-smoking table, isn’t it?
   g. No, thanks. Just the menu, please.
   h. This is the Taj Mahal. How can I help you?
   i. What time would you like?
   j. Yes, madam. A table for two at nine. We look forward to seeing you.
   k. Yes, madam. Let me show you your table. It’s over there, by the window.
   l. Yes, madam. Would you like something to drink now?

Now put the sentences in exercise 7 in the correct order to make two dialogues.

**Dialogue 1**

**Dialogue 2**
1 Complete the sentences. Put the verbs in brackets into the present perfect simple.

1 She ______ (apply) for the senior manager’s job, but she doesn’t have much experience.
2 She ______ (be) very stressed at work and she gets angry very quickly.
3 She ______ (already / leave) – she hates waiting.
4 She ______ (do) lots of different training courses, so she can do almost anything in the office now.
5 She ______ (never / need) to ask for help from the boss.
6 She ______ (think) of some unusual new ways to recruit staff.

2 Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

a She hasn’t got a lot of ______ / patient.
   a). patience  b). patient
b She’s extremely ______ / skilled.
   a). skilled  b). skills

3 Match the sentences in exercise 2 to the sentences in exercise 1.

4 Complete the sentences. Put the verbs in brackets into the present perfect simple or the past simple.

1 I ______ (drive) the president to the airport yesterday.
2 I ______ (not / give) him his medicine yet.
3 I ______ (be) on the cover of three different women’s magazines.
4 I ______ (make) six films but I usually work in the theatre.
5 I ______ (never / have) a customer who was so hungry.
6 In my last job, I ______ (work) for the company that is building a bridge over the river.
7 Last week, I ______ (write) an article about the salaries of top businessmen.
8 You are the best student that I ______ (ever / have)!

5 Match the sentences in exercise 4 to one of the jobs in the box.

actor chauffeur engineer journalist model
nurse teacher waitress

6 Work in pairs. Choose four more jobs and write a sentence (as in exercise 4) for each one. Your partner must guess the job.

7 Complete the sentences with a word from the box.

apply career company course fired
leave living salary unemployment

1 Why did you ______ for this job?
   a) Because I’ve got no money and the ______ is good.
   b) I’ve always wanted to work for this ______.
2 Why did you ______ your last job?
   a) My boss hated me and I was ______.
   b) Because I wanted a more interesting ______.
3 What do you do for a ______ at the moment?
   a) I’m between jobs, but I’m doing a training ______ in personnel management.
   b) I get ______ benefit.
4 Have you ever been in ______ of other people?
   a) Yes, I was ______ for a team of five people in my last job.
   b) No, I haven’t. I’ve never been a ______.
5 Why do you think you should ______ this job?
   a) My ______ said this was my lucky day.
   b) I think I have the right ______ and personal qualities.

8 Choose the best answers to the questions in exercise 7. Then work in pairs and practise the interview with your partner.

9 Complete the dialogue with a phrase from the box.

do you think I should how about if I were you
what should I why don’t you you should

A: I hate this job. (1) ______ leave?
B: Not yet. (2) ______ wait until you find another one.
A: I haven’t got the time at the moment.
B: (3) ______ taking a day off so you can look for something else?
A: (4) ______ tell the boss?
B: (5) ______ ring and say you’re not well.
A: I can’t do that!
B: Why not? I’d take a few days off (6) ______.
8 | Review

1 Rearrange the words to complete the (unsuccessful) predictions.

1 a be not popular way will
   The telephone __________ of communicating. (1876)
2 able be machines never will
   Heavy __________ to fly. (1895)
3 actors hear to want won’t
   People __________ talking in films. (1927)
4 be four might possible sell to
   It __________ or five computers. (1943)
5 future may more no the weigh
   Computers in __________ than 1.5 tons. (1949)
6 never television the use will
   We __________ for entertainment. (1955)
7 a computer people that want will
   I don’t think __________ in their homes. (1977)

2 In four of the sentences below there are grammatical mistakes. Correct the mistakes.

1 Computers will definitely get smaller and smaller.
2 English definitely won’t be an important language fifty years from now.
3 It won’t be possibly necessary to find new sources of energy.
4 Military engineers will probably develop more powerful lasers.
5 Scientists maybe will find a way to travel in time.
6 The world’s population will possibly double before the end of the century.
7 There won’t be probably another world war.
8 We perhaps will make contact with aliens in the next few years.

3 Decide if the sentences describe predictions or plans. Then choose the correct verb form to complete the sentences.

1 Are you going to / Will you watch the football on TV this evening?
2 Do you think the talk is going to / will be interesting?
3 I’m going to / I’ll check my email when I get home.
4 It’s going to / It will be more difficult for young people to find a job.
5 New kinds of medicine are going to / will make us all live longer.
6 We’re going to / We’ll buy a new car next month.
7 Why is she going to / will she live in Japan?
8 You’re never going to / You’ll never see a more frightening film.

4 Put if in the correct place in the sentences below.

1 He won’t like it if you do that.
2 I have time, I’ll come and see you.
3 I need some money, I’ll ask the bank.
4 I’ll help you if you like.
5 They’ll be very sad if you go away.
6 We don’t leave soon, we’ll be late.
7 We’ll miss the plane if we don’t hurry.
8 You’ll be ill if you eat that.

5 Choose the correct verb form to complete the text.

If the world’s population (1) continues / will continue to rise, it (2) becomes / will become more and more difficult to feed everyone. Some scientists think that genetically modified (GM) food is the answer. But not everyone agrees. We will need more research before we (3) know / will know if GM food is really safe, they say. For example, what (4) happens / will happen to ordinary plants and animals if we (5) grow / will grow GM food on our farms? The GM companies say there is no danger. They say that when farmers (6) use / will use GM crops, they (7) need / will need fewer chemicals on their farms. And if we (8) use / will use fewer chemicals, our food (9) is / will be healthier to eat.

6 Put the instructions below in the correct order.

☐ all, click on ‘Tools’ on the main toolbar. Next, ☐ that says ‘current selection’. After that, choose the dictionary that ☐ the word that you want to translate and click on the button.
☐ select ‘Language’ and click on ‘Translate’. You ☐ you will see the translation in the box.
☐ You can probably use your computer to translate words into English. First of ☐ you want to use. Finally, click on the ‘Go’ button and ☐ will then see a ‘Translate’ window on your screen. Highlight

7 Choose the best adjective to complete the questions about your town.

1 What is important / impossible for a visitor to know?
2 Where is it unhealthy / unusual to see tourists?
3 Where is it easy / healthy to park in the centre of town?
4 When is it legal / usual for people to eat?
5 Where is it illegal / possible to buy English books?
6 When is it difficult / safe to find a taxi in your town?
7 At what age is it healthy / legal to go to a nightclub?
8 When is it dangerous / important to walk in the park?

8 Work with a partner. Ask and answer the questions.
9 | Review

1. Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.
1. At what time in the evening do you usually get tired / tiring?
2. Do you ever get annoyed / annoying with your best friend? Why?
3. What do you do when you are bored / boring?
4. What’s the most excited / exciting thing you’ve ever done?
5. When was the last time you felt really frightened / frightening?
6. Where was your most disappointed / disappointing holiday?
7. Who is the most interested / interesting person you’ve ever met?

2. Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions in exercise 1.

3. Complete the text. Put the verbs in brackets into the present simple passive.

China Central Television (CCTV) (1) (own) by the Chinese government. It receives some money from the government but programmes (2) (pay) for with advertising money. It has thirteen different channels and these are called CCTV-1, CCTV-2, CCTV-3, etc. Programmes (3) (make) in three different languages: Mandarin, Fujian dialect and English.

The most popular programme is the news, which (4) (watch) by more than 300 million people every day. Soap operas are also very popular and the stars of the shows (5) (know) to millions of people.

The English language programmes (6) (show) on CCTV-9. It has a variety of programmes, including news, business news, documentaries and sport. For foreigners it is interesting because current affairs (7) (look) at from a Chinese point of view. CCTV (8) (see) by many viewers in the USA.

4. Complete the questions with a verbs from the box. Use the past simple passive.

call direct hit play receive save win build

1. When and where ________ the Titanic ________?
2. What ________ the captain of the ship ________?
3. How many warnings about icebergs ________ ________ by the ship?
4. When ________ the ship finally ________ by an iceberg?
5. How many people ________ ________ from the ship?
6. Who ________ the film ________ by?
7. Who ________ the main roles in the film ________ by?
8. How many Oscars ________ ________ by the movie?

5. The information below gives you the answers to the questions in exercise 4. Use the information to make sentences about the Titanic.

1. The Titanic was built in 1911 in Belfast.
2. It in 1911 in Belfast
3. Edward Smith
4. six, or possibly seven
5. at 11.40 pm on April 14th 1912
6. about 700
7. James Cameron
8. Kate Winslet and Leonardo DiCaprio
9. eleven

6. Complete the text. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct present simple form: active or passive.

The Simpsons is probably the most popular TV show in the world. It (1) (watch) in more than 70 countries around the world. It's also expensive to buy. In the UK, Channel 4 (2) (pay) £700,000 for every episode.

The show's creator, Matt Groening, (3) (write) other cartoons for TV and newspapers. In one episode of The Simpsons, we (4) (see) Groening signing books. He (5) (introduce) as the creator of the TV show, Futurama.

The characters in The Simpsons (6) (base) on Groening's own family. Groening's father, for example, (7) (call) Homer and his mother Margaret. The main characters (8) (play) by a team of actors. It (9) (think) that these actors (10) (earn) more than $250,000 for every episode. From time to time, famous Hollywood actors like Mel Gibson or Danny DeVito (11) (star) in the show.

7. Rearrange the lines to make a dialogue at a box office.

- Certainly, I'll see what we've got available. Which show do you want - the Friday or the Saturday?
- Could you hold on and I'll check for you? No, I'm afraid that's sold out, but we've got seats in the stalls for the Saturday.
- Fine. Can I pay by credit card?
- Hi. I'd like ten tickets for the Beanie Man concert, please.
- OK, that's ten tickets for Beanie Man on the Saturday. That will be £180 altogether, sir.
- That's fine. Ten, please.
- The Friday. Downstairs in the stalls if that's possible.
- Yes, of course. Could I take your details, please?
1 Complete the sentences with for or since.

1 She’s seen many different specialists ______ the illness started.
2 She hasn’t had a cough ______ she was a child.
3 She’s had high blood pressure ______ the last few days.
4 She’s lost a lot of weight ______ the beginning of the year.
5 She’s felt exhausted ______ a week or two.
6 Her back has been painful ______ about ten days.
7 She’s taken five days off work ______ the problems began.
8 She hasn’t taken antibiotics ______ a long time.

2 Complete the text. Put the verbs in brackets into the past simple or the present perfect simple.

When Valerie Brasseur (1) ________ (finish) nursing school, there was only one thing that she (2) ________ (want) to do. For the last six months, Valerie (3) ________ (be) in the Sudan where she is working as a nurse for the organization Médecins Sans Frontières (Doctors Without Borders).

A group of French doctors (4) ________ (begin) the organization in 1971. Since then, MSF (5) ________ (provide) medical help in more than 80 countries around the world. Because the staff work in countries at war, MSF (6) ________ (never / be) out of the news and, in 1999, it (7) ________ (win) the Nobel Peace Prize.

Valerie (8) ________ (know) about MSF since she was 18 – the year that she (9) ________ (leave) home and (10) ________ (go) to nursing school. It was also the year that her parents (11) ________ (begin) to work for the organization. Because Valerie is in the Sudan and her parents in Central America, she (12) ________ (not / see) them for over eighteen months.

3 In the dialogue below there are six grammatical mistakes. Correct the mistakes.

A: Good morning, Mr Riley. I didn’t see you for at least two weeks. What’s wrong with you?
B: It’s my chest, doctor. It’s been really painful.
A: How long do you have the pain?
B: Since I stopped smoking.
A: When exactly have you stopped smoking?
B: Oh, I stopped the day before yesterday.
A: So you haven’t had a cigarette since two days?
B: Yes, I’ve found it very difficult.

A: Where exactly does it hurt?
B: Here and here and here. I feel awful.
A: Anything else?
B: Well, I am under a lot of stress in the last few days.
A: I see. Take off your shirt. I’ll have a look at you. Yes, it’s as I thought. It’s normal, I’m afraid, when people stop smoking.
B: Can you give me a prescription for it?
A: No, but come back and see me if the pain hasn’t been away in the next few days, OK?

4 Choose the best way to continue the mini-dialogues below.

1 She’s been to see the doctor.
   a) What did the doctor say?
   b) What time did she leave?
2 I went to the station this morning to say goodbye to my parents.
   a) Where have they been?
   b) Where have they gone?
3 Where has your boss gone?
   a) I don’t know. He didn’t want to say.
   b) He’s just had a week’s holiday in Tunisia.
4 I played golf at the new club near the river at the weekend.
   a) Oh, I’ve been there, too.
   b) Oh, I’ve gone there, too.
5 So, is this the first time you’ve seen the new hospital?
   a) Yes, I’ve been away a long time.
   b) Yes, I’ve gone away a long time.

5 Complete the questions with a word from the box.

check-up operation pressure specialist
suffer symptoms treatment weight

1 Do you ever ________ from stress?
2 Have you ever been to hospital for an ________?
3 How long do you have to wait for an appointment with a ________ doctor?
4 How often should you see a doctor for a ________?
5 What are the ________ of flu?
6 What is the best ________ for a hangover?
7 What is the best way to lose ________?
8 What should you do if you have high blood ________?

6 Work with a partner. Ask and answer the questions in exercise 1.
Review

1 Combine the pairs of sentences with an infinitive of purpose and make any necessary changes.
1 He needs a new suit to wear for his interview.
1 He needs a new suit. He'll wear it for his interview.
2 He bought a new car. He wanted to impress his girlfriend.
3 She called the restaurant. She booked a table for this evening.
4 He spoke to his boss. He asked for a pay rise.
5 She went to the changing-room. She tried on the jeans.
6 She's started swimming. She's hoping to get fit.
7 He used a thesaurus. He found a better word.
8 She always reads the newspaper. She looks at her horoscope.

2 Choose the best explanation for the signs.

1 CREDIT CARDS WELCOME
a) You can't pay by credit card.
b) You don't have to pay by cash.
c) You have to pay by cash.

2 WE DO NOT ACCEPT CHEQUES UNDER £20
a) You can pay by cheque if it's more than £20.
b) You can't pay by cheque if it's more than £20.
c) You have to pay by cheque if it's more than £20.

3 BUY 2 PACKETS - GET 1 FREE!
 a) You can't buy more than two packets.
b) You don't have to pay for the third packet.
c) You have to buy three packets.

4 NO DOGS ALLOWED
a) You can't bring dogs in here.
b) You don't have to bring dogs in here.
c) You must have a dog.

5 STAFF TOILET ONLY
a) Customers can use this toilet.
b) Customers have to find another toilet.
c) Staff can't use this toilet.

6 BUY NOW, PAY LATER
(12 MONTHS FREE CREDIT)
 a) You can't pay later.
b) You don't have to spend anything now.
c) You must pay now.

3 Match the sentences 1–5 to the sentences a–e.
1 At my primary school, all the boys had to wear a uniform.
2 When it was cold in winter, we didn't have to wear shorts.
3 The girls couldn't wear trousers.
4 We couldn't wear trainers.
5 The teachers had to wear black gowns.
a) Some of them also wore a funny hat, but they didn't have to.
b) The school rules said we could only have black shoes.
c) It was grey shorts, a grey jacket and tie.
d) They had grey skirts or a grey dress in the summer.
e) We could wear trousers instead.

4 Rewrite the sentences with the present or past form of can/can't, have to/don't have to.
1 A few years ago, it was possible to smoke almost anywhere.
You ____________________________.
2 Was it necessary for you wait a long time?
Did ____________________________.
3 It isn't necessary to say 'Sorry' all the time.
You ____________________________.
4 It was impossible to find anywhere to park my car.
I ____________________________.
5 It was necessary to get a new car after the accident.
We ____________________________.
6 It's necessary for me to work overtime this evening.
I ____________________________.
7 Hats are not allowed in many churches.
You ____________________________.

5 Correct the mistakes in the sentences below.
1 Can you tell me where the change room is, please?
2 Do you like shopping for clothes?
3 Excuse me, have you got this suit on a darker colour?
4 I like this top. Can I try it on?
5 I really like your jeans. Where did you get it?
6 I'm sorry, this doesn't suit. Can I try another size?
7 She's gone to the department store to buy some underwears.
8 What size trouser do you take?
1. Complete the sentences with a preposition from the box.

- across
- along
- around
- out of
- over
- past
- through

1. How long does it take a supersonic jet to fly ______ to the world?
2. Schumacher got ______ his car and waited for the race to begin.
3. She plans to swim ______ the Straits of Gibraltar between Spain and Morocco.
4. The bus drove ______ the bus stop without stopping.
5. The prisoners climbed ______ the wall and escaped from the prison.
6. There was a lot of traffic in the city centre and it was difficult to get ______.
7. What time do you get ______ class after your lesson?
8. You need to drive ______ this road for about five miles.

2. Complete the phrasal verbs in the sentences below.

1. Marco Polo's family called ______ their plan to travel to China by sea and decided to go by land instead.
2. Columbus had many problems crossing the Atlantic, but he decided to carry ______.
3. Roald Amundsen gave ______ his attempt to go to the North Pole because of the start of the First World War in 1914.
4. Amelia Earhart often had to put ______ her flights for a few days because of the weather.
5. Humboldt often needed to sort ______ diplomatic problems before he could travel.
6. Neil Armstrong's Apollo 11 mission took ______ from the Kennedy Space Centre in Florida.

3. Choose the correct form to complete the sentences.

1. Do you know anyone who is / who is / who are homeless?
2. Hungary is a country that has / that have / who have no sea coast.
3. I never eat food that is / which are / who is genetically modified.
4. I was surprised that there were some people who has / who has / who have never heard of Marco Polo.
5. It's a journey that take / which takes / who takes more than five days.
6. The newspaper showed pictures of protesters that was / which were / who were in the trees.
7. There are many mysteries that has / which has / which have never been solved.
8. There are some English accents that is / that are / which is very difficult to understand.

4. Read the newspaper article below. Put the relative clauses a–h in the gaps 1–8.

Police arrest virus writer

German police have arrested Sven Jaschans, a teenager (1) ______. They have also taken a number of computers and disks (2) ______. The virus first appeared on the internet on May 1 of this year. Millions of computer-users around the world were hit by the virus (3) ______. Some businesses had to close temporarily so that they could install software (4) ______. It is understood that the police received a phone call from someone (5) ______. Microsoft said that they would pay for information (6) ______. Jaschans, an 18-year old high school student from Rotenburg, wrote the virus alone. However, police believe that he was also part of a group of people (7) ______. Jaschans's mother runs a company from the family home. The company provides help to people (8) ______.

5. Complete the sentences with a word from the box.

- conservation
- engineering
- global
- homeless
- organic
- poverty
- viruses
- wage

1. The government should increase the minimum ______.
2. We shouldn’t worry too much about ______ warming.
3. People who design computer ______ must be crazy.
4. I think ______ food is a waste of money.
5. There’s always a strong connection between ______ and crime.
6. Animal ______ is not a very important issue.
7. Genetic ______ is the solution to the world’s food problems.
8. There will probably be more and more ______ people on the streets.

6. Work in pairs. Discuss your responses to the opinions in exercise 5.
Straightforward

Straightforward is a multi-level course for adults and young adults. Based on observation of what good teachers do in the classroom, Straightforward is transparent in its structure, pragmatic in its methodology and varied in its content.

- Double-page lessons offer a balanced mix of language input, skills work and oral tasks.  
  → p18-19

- A systematic and extensive lexical syllabus enriches students’ topic-based vocabulary and develops their awareness of lexical patterns.  
  → p80

- A wide range of speaking tasks help students become flexible communicators in English.  
  → p122

- Functional language lessons present and practise language that is immediately useful to students in their daily lives.  
  → p72-73

- A wide variety of reading and listening texts present relevant and authentic English.  
  → p30

- ‘Did you know’ sections give up-to-date cultural information.  
  → p101

Other components

- Workbook without key & CD pack
  ISBN 978-1-4050-7526-8

- Workbook with key & CD pack
  ISBN 978-1-4050-7525-1

- Teacher’s Book (including Teacher’s notes, Resource materials & two Teacher’s Resource CDs)
  ISBN 978-1-4050-7548-0

- Class CDs

- Portfolio

COMMON EUROPEAN FRAMEWORK

A1 | A2 | B1 | B2 | C1 | C2

MACMILLAN

www.macmillanenglish.com

Use your Macmillan Essential Dictionary with this book.